

The lower algebraic K -theory of virtually cyclic subgroups of the braid groups of the sphere and of $\mathbb{Z}[B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)]$

John Guaschi

Normandie Université, UNICAEN, CNRS,
Laboratoire de Mathématiques Nicolas Oresme UMR CNRS 6139,
CS 14032, 14032 Caen Cedex 5, France
e-mail: john.guaschi@unicaen.fr

Daniel Juan-Pineda

Centro de Ciencias Matemáticas,
Universidad Nacional Autónoma de México,
Campus Morelia, Morelia, Michoacán, Mexico 58089
e-mail: daniel@matmor.unam.mx

Silvia Millán López

Colegio de Bachilleres del Estado de Tlaxcala,
Calle Miguel N. Lira No. 3 Col. Centro,
Tlaxcala CP 90000, Mexico
e-mail: smillan@cobatlaxcala.edu.mx

29th June 2018

Abstract

We study K -theoretical aspects of the braid groups $B_n(\mathbb{S}^2)$ on n strings of the 2-sphere, which by results of the second two authors, are known to satisfy the Farrell-Jones fibred isomorphism conjecture [56]. In light of this, in order to determine the algebraic K -theory of the group ring $\mathbb{Z}[B_n(\mathbb{S}^2)]$, one should first compute that of its virtually cyclic subgroups, which were classified by D. L. Gonçalves and the first author [47]. We calculate the Whitehead and K_{-1} -groups of the group rings of the finite subgroups (dicyclic and binary polyhedral) of $B_n(\mathbb{S}^2)$ for all $4 \leq n \leq 11$. Some new phenomena occur, such as the appearance of torsion for the K_{-1} -groups. We then go on to study the case $n = 4$ in detail, which is the smallest value of n for which $B_n(\mathbb{S}^2)$ is infinite. We show that $B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)$ is an amalgamated product of two finite groups, from which we are able to determine a universal space for proper actions of the group $B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)$. We also calculate the algebraic K -theory of the infinite virtually cyclic subgroups of $B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)$, including the Nil groups of the quaternion group of order 8. This enables us to determine the lower algebraic K -theory of $\mathbb{Z}[B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)]$.

Contents

1	Introduction	1
2	Lower algebraic K-theory of the finite subgroups of $B_n(\mathbb{S}^2)$	5
2.1	Classification of the virtually cyclic subgroups of $B_n(\mathbb{S}^2)$	5
2.2	Conjugacy classes of binary polyhedral groups	7
2.3	Whitehead groups of the finite subgroups of $B_n(\mathbb{S}^2)$	10
2.4	$\tilde{K}_0(\mathbb{Z}[G])$ for the finite subgroups of $B_n(\mathbb{S}^2)$	11
2.5	$K_{-1}(\mathbb{Z}[G])$ for the finite subgroups of $B_n(\mathbb{S}^2)$	14
	2.5.1 Torsion of $K_{-1}(\mathbb{Z}[G])$ for finite subgroups of $B_n(\mathbb{S}^2)$	15
	2.5.2 The rank of $K_{-1}(\mathbb{Z}[G])$ for the finite subgroups of $B_n(\mathbb{S}^2)$	20
2.6	The lower algebraic K -theory of the finite subgroups of $B_n(\mathbb{S}^2)$ for $4 \leq n \leq 11$	33
3	The braid group $B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)$, and the conjugacy classes of its maximal virtually cyclic subgroups	36
3.1	Generalities about $B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)$	36
3.2	Maximal virtually cyclic subgroups of $B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)$	39
	3.2.1 Proof of parts (a) and (b) of Theorem 41	41
	3.2.2 Proof of parts (c) and (d) of Theorem 41	42
	3.2.3 Proof of the existence of maximal subgroups $\mathcal{Q}_8 \times \mathbb{Z}$ in part (c) of Theorem 41	46
3.3	Conjugacy classes of maximal infinite virtually cyclic subgroups in $B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)$. .	50
4	Lower algebraic K-theory groups of the group ring $\mathbb{Z}[B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)]$	53
4.1	The lower K -theory of infinite virtually cyclic groups	53
4.2	Preliminary K -theoretical calculations for $\mathbb{Z}[B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)]$	55
4.3	Nil group computations	56
A	The fibred isomorphism conjecture	61
B	Braid groups	63
	Bibliography	67

Chapter 1

Introduction

Given a group G , the K -theoretic fibred isomorphism conjecture of F. T. Farrell and L. E. Jones asserts that the algebraic K -theory of its integral group ring $\mathbb{Z}[G]$ may be computed from the knowledge of the algebraic K -theory groups of its virtually cyclic subgroups (see [33] or Appendix A for the statement). This conjecture has been verified for a number of classes of groups, such as discrete cocompact subgroups of virtually connected Lie groups [33], finitely-generated Fuchsian groups [11], Bianchi groups [9], pure braid groups of aspherical surfaces [3], braid groups of aspherical surfaces [35] and for some classes of mapping class groups [10]. In [63], Lafont and Ortiz presented explicit computations of the lower algebraic K -theory of hyperbolic 3-simplex reflection groups, and then together with Magurn, for that of certain reflection groups [60]. Similar calculations were performed for virtually free groups in [54].

Let $n \in \mathbb{N}$, let M be a surface, and let $B_n(M)$ (resp. $P_n(M)$) denote the n -string braid group (resp. n -string pure braid group) of M [13, 52]. Some basic information and facts about surface braid groups are given in Appendix B. The braid groups of the 2-sphere \mathbb{S}^2 were first studied by Zariski, and then later by Fadell and Van Buskirk during the 1960's [30, 86]. If M either is the 2-sphere \mathbb{S}^2 or the projective plane $\mathbb{R}P^2$, the results of [3, 35] do not apply to its braid groups, the principal reason being that these groups possess torsion [30, 76]. The second two authors of this book proved that the conjecture of Farrell and Jones holds also for the braid groups of these two surfaces, which using the method prescribed by the conjecture, enabled them to carry out complete computations of the lower algebraic K -groups for $P_n(\mathbb{S}^2)$ and $P_n(\mathbb{R}P^2)$ [56]. One necessary ingredient in this process is the knowledge of the virtually cyclic subgroups of $P_n(M)$. For $n \geq 4$, $P_n(\mathbb{S}^2)$ has only one non-trivial finite subgroup, generated by the 'full twist' braid, which is central and of order 2, and from this, it is straightforward to see that $P_n(\mathbb{S}^2)$ has very few isomorphism classes of virtually cyclic subgroups. The classification of the isomorphism classes of the virtually cyclic subgroups of $P_n(\mathbb{R}P^2)$, which was established in [45] and used subsequently in [56] to compute the K -theory groups of $\mathbb{Z}[P_n(\mathbb{R}P^2)]$, is rather more involved.

Our aim in this manuscript is to implement similar K -theoretical computations for the group ring $\mathbb{Z}[B_n(\mathbb{S}^2)]$ of the full braid groups of \mathbb{S}^2 . In order to do so, one must determine initially the virtually cyclic subgroups (finite, and then infinite) of $B_n(\mathbb{S}^2)$, and then compute the K -groups of these subgroups. If $n \leq 3$ then $B_n(\mathbb{S}^2)$ is finite, and so we shall assume in much of this manuscript that $n \geq 4$. The torsion of $B_n(\mathbb{S}^2)$ was determined in [38], and its fi-

nite order elements were classified in [68]. It was shown by D. L. Gonçalves in collaboration with the first author that up to isomorphism, the finite subgroups of $B_n(\mathbb{S}^2)$ are cyclic, dicyclic or binary polyhedral (see [43] or Theorem 2). As for the corresponding pure braid groups, one must then determine the infinite virtually cyclic subgroups of $B_n(\mathbb{S}^2)$ with the aid of the characterisation due to Epstein and Wall of infinite virtually cyclic groups [28, 55, 78]. Up to isomorphism and with a few exceptions in the case that n is a small even number, this was achieved in [47]. A taste of the results is given in Theorem 4 when n is odd and in Theorem 39 when $n = 4$.

In the ensuing quest to compute the lower algebraic K -theory of the group ring $\mathbb{Z}[B_n(\mathbb{S}^2)]$, we encountered a number of difficulties, among them:

- (a) the family of virtually cyclic subgroups of $B_n(\mathbb{S}^2)$ is relatively large, and depends on n , contrasting sharply with the case of the pure braid groups analysed in [56].
- (b) the lower algebraic K -theory of even the finite subgroups of $B_n(\mathbb{S}^2)$ is poorly understood, and the investigation of the K -groups of dicyclic and binary polyhedral groups presents additional technical obstacles compared to that of the dihedral and polyhedral groups that appear in [60, 63] for example.
- (c) in order to apply the method of calculation suggested by the fibred isomorphism conjecture, one needs not only to compute the various Nil groups, but also to discover a suitable universal space for the family of virtually cyclic subgroups of $B_n(\mathbb{S}^2)$. In spite of the rich topological and geometric structures of the braid groups and their associated configuration spaces, this space has thus far proved to be elusive for $n \geq 5$.

Chapter 2 is devoted to the second point, that of the computation of the lower K -theory groups of many of the finite subgroups of $B_n(\mathbb{S}^2)$. In Section 2.1, we recall the classification up to isomorphism of the finite subgroups of $B_n(\mathbb{S}^2)$, and of its virtually cyclic subgroups when n is odd or $n = 4$. In Section 2.2, we compute the number of different types of conjugacy classes of the binary polyhedral groups in Proposition 7. These results are used later in the chapter, when we determine the lower algebraic K -theory of the group rings of these groups. In Sections 2.3 and 2.5, we calculate the Whitehead and the K_{-1} -groups respectively of the integral group rings of many of the finite subgroups of $B_n(\mathbb{S}^2)$. To our knowledge, these sections contain a number of original results, as well as some new phenomena, such as the existence of torsion for some K_{-1} -groups, that did not appear in previous work [54, 60, 63]. This necessitates alternative techniques, notably the application of results of Yamada to determine local Schur indices [84, 85], which enables us to calculate the torsion of our K_{-1} -groups. We believe that the methods that we use to calculate these K -groups for dicyclic groups of certain orders may be extended to dicyclic groups of other orders. The Whitehead groups are given in Proposition 10. The main results concerning the K_{-1} -groups are Theorem 25 for dicyclic groups of order $4m$, where m is an odd prime, Proposition 27 for the generalised quaternions (the dicyclic groups of order a power of 2), Proposition 28 for the binary polyhedral groups. We also compute the K_{-1} -groups of the dicyclic groups of order 24, 36 and 40 in Proposition 29, and of cyclic groups of order $2p^q$, 12 and 20, where p is prime and $q \in \mathbb{N}$ in Proposition 30. In Section 2.4, we recall briefly the work of Swan pertaining to the calculation of the \tilde{K}_0 -groups of the group rings of the binary polyhedral groups, and of the dicyclic groups of order $4m$ for $m \leq 11$ [73], and in Theorem 14, we compute $\tilde{K}_0(\mathbb{Z}[G])$ where G is a cyclic group of order 18, 20 or 22. For dicyclic groups of higher

order, the situation is complicated, and little seems to be known about the corresponding \tilde{K}_0 -groups. In Section 2.6, we sum up the results of many of our computations in Table 2.1, which lists the lower K -theory groups of the finite subgroups of $B_n(\mathbb{S}^2)$ for all $4 \leq n \leq 11$. From this table, we may also obtain the lower K -theory groups of $B_n(\mathbb{S}^2)$ in the cases where $B_n(\mathbb{S}^2)$ is finite, namely for $n \in \{1, 2, 3\}$.

The aim of the remaining two chapters is to determine the lower algebraic K -theory of $\mathbb{Z}[B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)]$. We study the case of $B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)$ in detail and show how the algebraic and geometric features of this group interact, thus allowing us to compute its lower K -groups. In preparation for the explicit computations in Chapter 4, in Chapter 3, we describe the ingredients for the corresponding computations in the case of *infinite* virtually cyclic subgroups. We start by recalling some basic facts about the group $B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)$ in Section 3.1. One striking property, which was proved in [44, Theorem 1.3(3)], is that it possesses a finite normal subgroup isomorphic to the quaternion group of order 8. This enables us to show in Proposition 37 that $B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)$ is an amalgamated product of the generalised quaternion group of order 16 and the binary tetrahedral group, the amalgamation being along this normal subgroup, from which we deduce in Remark 38 that it is hyperbolic in the sense of Gromov. In Section 3.2, we determine the isomorphism classes of the maximal virtually cyclic subgroups of $B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)$ in Theorem 41, and in Section 3.3, we show that there are an infinite number of conjugacy classes for each of the isomorphism classes of the infinite maximal virtually cyclic subgroups. These properties aid greatly, not just in the computation of the K -groups of the virtually cyclic subgroups of $B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)$ and of the corresponding Nil groups, but also to exhibit an appropriate universal space referred to in (c) above.

In Chapter 4, we bring together the results of the previous chapters to compute the lower K -groups of $B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)$. In Section 4.1, we recall some facts and results about the lower K -theory of infinite virtually cyclic groups. In Section 4.2, we determine the lower K -groups of $B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)$ up to the computations of the associated Nil groups, and in Section 4.3, we determine these Nil groups. One result that is interesting in its own right is Proposition 52 where we calculate the Bass Nil groups $NK_i(\mathbb{Z}[Q_8])$ for $i = 0, 1$ of the quaternion group Q_8 of order 8. Our calculations show that both $\text{Wh}(B_4(\mathbb{S}^2))$ and $\tilde{K}_0(\mathbb{Z}[B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)])$ are infinitely-generated Abelian groups, and contain infinite direct sums of Abelian 2-groups. In contrast, we shall see that $K_{-1}(\mathbb{Z}[B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)]) \cong \mathbb{Z} \oplus \mathbb{Z}_2$. Compared with the families of groups considered in [54, 60, 63], the existence of torsion here is once more a new phenomenon. We summarise these results as follows.

Theorem 1. *The group $B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)$ has the following lower algebraic K -groups:*

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Wh}(B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)) &\cong \mathbb{Z} \oplus \text{Nil}_1, \\ \tilde{K}_0(\mathbb{Z}[B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)]) &\cong \mathbb{Z}_2 \oplus \text{Nil}_0, \quad \text{and} \\ K_{-1}(\mathbb{Z}[B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)]) &\cong \mathbb{Z}_2 \oplus \mathbb{Z}, \\ K_{-i}(\mathbb{Z}[B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)]) &= 0 \text{ for all } i \geq 2, \end{aligned}$$

where for $i = 0, 1$, the groups Nil_i are isomorphic to a countably-infinite direct sum of \mathbb{Z}_2 , \mathbb{Z}_4 or $\mathbb{Z}_2 \oplus \mathbb{Z}_4$.

For $n \geq 5$, we cannot expect the group $B_n(\mathbb{S}^2)$ to enjoy properties, such as hyperbolicity, similar to those of $B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)$. Furthermore, we have not been able as yet to determine

an appropriate model for the universal space for the family of virtually cyclic subgroups of $B_n(\mathbb{S}^2)$. There are some candidates suggested by the theory of Brunnian braids, but the corresponding subgroups are of large index, and do not seem to be terribly useful from a practical viewpoint. On the positive side, for small odd values of n , the family of virtually cyclic subgroups of $B_n(\mathbb{S}^2)$ is relatively small, and our techniques enable us to determine the corresponding K -groups of these subgroups. If we are able to find an appropriate universal space, we hope to be able to determine the K -groups of $B_n(\mathbb{S}^2)$ for other values of n .

Acknowledgements

We wish to thank the following colleagues for helpful and fruitful discussions: Bruno Anglès, for help with the Galois theory of Section 2.5.2; Eric Jespers, Gerardo Raggi and Ángel del Río (and the GAP package Wedderga [14]), for aiding us with the Wedderburn decomposition of dicyclic and binary polyhedral groups; Jean-François Lafont, Ivonne Ortiz and Stratos Prassidis, for conversations on K -theoretical aspects of our work during the early stages of the writing of this paper; and Chuck Weibel for valuable comments at various points. We would also like to thank the referees for their comments on the manuscript, and one referee in particular, who made a number of useful remarks and suggestions to make it easier to read.

The authors are grateful to the French-Mexican Laboratoire International Associé LAISLA for partial financial support. D. Juan-Pineda was partially supported by the CNRS, PAPIIT-UNAM and CONACYT (México), and J. Guaschi was partially supported by the ANR project TheoGar n° ANR-08-BLAN-0269-02. J. Guaschi would like to thank the CNRS for having granted him a ‘délégation’ during the writing of part of this paper. J. Guaschi and S. Millán also wish to thank CONACYT (México) for partial financial support through its programme ‘Estancias postdoctorales y sabáticas vinculadas al fortalecimiento de la calidad del posgrado nacional’.

Chapter 2

Lower algebraic K -theory of the finite subgroups of $B_n(\mathbb{S}^2)$

2.1 Classification of the virtually cyclic subgroups of $B_n(\mathbb{S}^2)$

If G is a group that satisfies the Farrell-Jones fibred isomorphism conjecture, the lower algebraic K -theory of the group ring $\mathbb{Z}[G]$ may be calculated in principle if one knows the lower algebraic K -theory of the group rings of the virtually cyclic subgroups of G (see Appendix A). Recall that a group is said to be *virtually cyclic* if it possesses a cyclic subgroup of finite index. Clearly any finite group is virtually cyclic. By results of Epstein and Wall [28, 78], an infinite group is virtually cyclic if and only if it has two ends. This allows us to show that any infinite virtually cyclic group G is isomorphic either to $F \rtimes \mathbb{Z}$ or to $G_1 *_F G_2$, where F is a finite normal subgroup of G , and in the second case, F is of index 2 in both G_1 and G_2 . Consequently, in order to determine the virtually cyclic subgroups of G , one must first discover its finite subgroups. Let $G = B_n(\mathbb{S}^2)$, and if $m \geq 2$, let Dic_{4m} denote the *dicyclic* group of order $4m$, with presentation:

$$\text{Dic}_{4m} = \langle x, y \mid x^m = y^2, yxy^{-1} = x^{-1} \rangle. \quad (2.1)$$

If m is a power of 2, then we shall also say that Dic_{4m} is a *generalised quaternion* group, and denote it by Q_{4m} . Using a presentation of $B_n(\mathbb{S}^2)$, such as that given in Theorem 34, if $n \leq 3$, $B_n(\mathbb{S}^2)$ may be seen to be finite. The group $B_1(\mathbb{S}^2)$ is trivial, $B_2(\mathbb{S}^2)$ is isomorphic to \mathbb{Z}_2 , and $B_3(\mathbb{S}^2)$ is isomorphic to Dic_{12} , and its subgroups may be obtained easily. So in most of what follows, we shall assume that $n \geq 4$, in which case $B_n(\mathbb{S}^2)$ is infinite. The finite subgroups of $B_n(\mathbb{S}^2)$ were classified up to isomorphism in [43] as follows.

Theorem 2 ([43, Theorem 1.3]). *Let $n \geq 4$. The maximal finite subgroups of $B_n(\mathbb{S}^2)$ are isomorphic to one of the following groups:*

- (a) $\mathbb{Z}_{2(n-1)}$ if $n \geq 5$,
- (b) Dic_{4n} ,
- (c) $\text{Dic}_{4(n-2)}$ if $n = 5$ or $n \geq 7$,
- (d) the binary tetrahedral group, denoted by T^* , if $n \equiv 4 \pmod{6}$,
- (e) the binary octahedral group, denoted by O^* , if $n \equiv 0, 2 \pmod{6}$,
- (f) the binary icosahedral group, denoted by I^* , if $n \equiv 0, 2, 12, 20 \pmod{30}$.

More information on T^* , O^* and I^* , to which we refer collectively as the *binary polyhedral groups*, may be found in [1, 20, 21, 83]. It is well known that the subgroups of dicyclic and binary polyhedral groups are cyclic, dicyclic or binary polyhedral (see [47, Proposition 85] for the binary polyhedral case). We recall from [43, page 759] that the finite subgroups of $B_n(\mathbb{S}^2)$ are periodic of period 1, 2 or 4. Further, by [43, Proposition 1.5], any two finite subgroups of $B_n(\mathbb{S}^2)$ that are isomorphic are also conjugate, with the exception of those subgroups that are isomorphic to \mathbb{Z}_4 and Dic_{4r} if n is even and r divides $n/2$ or $(n-2)/2$, in which case are two conjugacy classes in each isomorphism class. Consequently, any such subgroup H of $B_n(\mathbb{S}^2)$ satisfies the following three conditions (see [1] or [74, page 20]):

- (a) the p^2 -condition: for any prime divisor p of $|H|$ ($|H|$ denotes the order of H), H contains no subgroup isomorphic to $\mathbb{Z}_p \times \mathbb{Z}_p$.
- (b) the $2p$ -condition: for any prime divisor p of $|H|$, any subgroup of H of order $2p$ is cyclic.
- (c) the Milnor condition: if H has an element of order 2, this element is unique (and so is central in H).

Remarks 3.

- (i) The p^2 -condition implies that the Sylow p -subgroups of H are either cyclic or generalised quaternion, the latter case occurring only if $p = 2$.
- (ii) If G is a dicyclic or binary polyhedral group, the centre $Z(G)$ is generated by the unique element of order 2.

The second step in the process is to classify the infinite virtually cyclic subgroups of $B_n(\mathbb{S}^2)$. Up to isomorphism, and with a finite number of exceptions, this was achieved in [47]. The statement of the main result of [47] is somewhat long to explain here, but to give a flavour of the results, we state the classification when n is odd, in which case the classification is complete for all values of n . We shall also recall the case $n = 4$ later in Theorem 39.

Theorem 4 ([47, Theorem 7]). *Let $n \geq 3$ be odd. Then up to isomorphism, the virtually cyclic subgroups of $B_n(\mathbb{S}^2)$ are as follows.*

- (I) *The isomorphism classes of the finite virtually cyclic subgroups of $B_n(\mathbb{S}^2)$ are:*
 - (i) Dic_{4m} , where $m \geq 3$ divides n or $n - 2$.
 - (ii) \mathbb{Z}_m , where $m \in \mathbb{N}$ divides $2n$, $2(n - 1)$ or $2(n - 2)$.
- (II) *If in addition $n \geq 5$, then the following groups are the isomorphism classes of the infinite virtually cyclic subgroups of $B_n(\mathbb{S}^2)$.*
 - (i) $\mathbb{Z}_m \rtimes_{\theta} \mathbb{Z}$, where $\theta(1) \in \{\text{Id}, -\text{Id}\}$, m is a strict divisor of $2(n - i)$, for $i \in \{0, 2\}$, and $m \neq n - i$.
 - (ii) $\mathbb{Z}_m \times \mathbb{Z}$, where m is a strict divisor of $2(n - 1)$.
 - (iii) $\text{Dic}_{4m} \times \mathbb{Z}$, where $m \geq 3$ is a strict divisor of $n - i$ for $i \in \{0, 2\}$.
 - (iv) $\mathbb{Z}_{4q} *_{\mathbb{Z}_{2q}} \mathbb{Z}_{4q}$, where q divides $(n - 1)/2$.
 - (v) $\text{Dic}_{4q} *_{\mathbb{Z}_{2q}} \text{Dic}_{4q}$, where $q \geq 2$ is a strict divisor of $n - i$, and $i \in \{0, 2\}$.

The aim of the rest of this chapter is to compute the lower algebraic K -theory of the group rings of many of the finite groups of $B_n(\mathbb{S}^2)$. In Section 2.2, we start by determining the number of different types of conjugacy classes in the binary polyhedral groups. The main result of that section, Proposition 7, will be used in the rest of the chapter to determine the lower algebraic K -theory of the group rings of T^* , O^* and I^* . In Sections 2.3, 2.4 and 2.5, we

calculate respectively the Whitehead, \tilde{K}_0 - and K_{-1} -groups of the group rings of many groups that appear in the statement of Theorem 2. This allows us in Section 2.6 to determine the lower algebraic K -theory of the group rings of the isomorphism classes of the finite groups of $B_n(\mathbb{S}^2)$ for all $4 \leq n \leq 11$, the results being summarised in Table 2.1.

2.2 Conjugacy classes of binary polyhedral groups

In this section, we compute the number of certain types of conjugacy classes of elements of the binary polyhedral groups. Some of these numbers will be used in the calculations of the lower algebraic K -theory of the group rings of these groups. Recall first that O^* is generated by the elements X, P, Q and R , subject to the following relations [83, page 198]:

$$\begin{cases} X^3 = 1, P^2 = Q^2 = R^2, PQP^{-1} = Q^{-1}, XPX^{-1} = Q, XQX^{-1} = PQ \\ RXR^{-1} = X^{-1}, RPR^{-1} = QP, RQR^{-1} = Q^{-1}. \end{cases} \quad (2.2)$$

It follows that O^* contains T^* as an index 2 subgroup generated by X, P and Q that are subject to the relations given in the first line of (2.2). The subgroup $\langle P, Q \rangle$ is isomorphic to \mathcal{Q}_8 , and X is of order 3 and acts by conjugation on $\langle P, Q \rangle$ by permuting P, Q and PQ cyclically, so that $T^* \cong \mathcal{Q}_8 \rtimes \mathbb{Z}_3$. Further, $O^* \setminus T^*$ is comprised of 12 elements of order 4 and twelve of order 8. We recall also that $|I^*| = 120$, that I^* is comprised of the trivial element, one element of order 2, thirty elements of order 4, twenty elements of order 3 and twenty of order 6, twenty-four elements of order 5 and twenty-four elements of order 10. The group I^* also contains subgroups isomorphic to T^* . The following lemma will be useful in some of our computations.

Lemma 5. *Let G be a dicyclic or binary polyhedral group, and let $g \in G$ be an element of order greater than or equal to 3. Then the centraliser $C_G(g)$ of g in G is cyclic.*

Proof. Let $g \in G$ be of order at least 3. Then $g \in Z(C_G(g))$, so $|Z(C_G(g))| \geq 3$. The subgroups of G are cyclic, dicyclic or binary polyhedral (see [47, Proposition 85] for the binary polyhedral case). Then $Z(C_G(g))$ is cyclic because the centre of a dicyclic or binary polyhedral group is isomorphic to \mathbb{Z}_2 by Remarks 3(ii). \square

If G is a finite group and d is a divisor of $|G|$, let $v(d)$ be the number of elements of order d in G , let $r_0(d)$ be the number of conjugacy classes of elements of order d in G , let $r_1(d)$ be the number of conjugacy classes of unordered pairs $\{g, g^{-1}\}$ of elements of order d in G , and let $r_2(d)$ be the number of conjugacy classes of cyclic subgroups of G of order d in G . If g, g' are elements of G of the same order d such that $\{g, g^{-1}\}$ is conjugate to $\{g', g'^{-1}\}$, then there exists $h \in G$ such that either $hgh^{-1} = g'$ or $hgh^{-1} = g'^{-1}$, so $h\langle g \rangle h^{-1} = \langle g' \rangle = \langle g'^{-1} \rangle$, and thus $r_1(d) \geq r_2(d)$. It thus follows that:

$$v(d) \geq r_0(d) \geq r_1(d) \geq r_2(d). \quad (2.3)$$

For small d , the inequality $r_1(d) \geq r_2(d)$ is an equality.

Lemma 6. *Let G be a finite group. Then $r_1(d) = r_2(d)$ for all $d \in \{1, 2, 3, 4, 6\}$.*

Proof of Lemma 6. If $d \in \{1, 2\}$ and if $g \in G$ is of order d then the pair $\{g, g^{-1}\}$ reduces to $\{g\}$ and then clearly $r_1(d) = r_2(d)$. So assume that $d \in \{3, 4, 6\}$. From above, it suffices to show that $r_1(d) \leq r_2(d)$. Note that if $g \in G$ is of order d then the elements of $\langle g \rangle$ of order d are precisely g and g^{-1} . If $g' \in G$ is also of order d and $\langle g \rangle$ and $\langle g' \rangle$ are conjugate then g is conjugate to g' or g'^{-1} , so $\{g, g^{-1}\}$ is conjugate to $\{g', g'^{-1}\}$, which completes the proof of the lemma. \square

The following proposition summarises the values of $\nu(d), r_0(d), r_1(d)$ and $r_2(d)$ for each of the three binary polyhedral groups. It will be used in the calculations of Whitehead and K_{-1} -groups in Proposition 10 and Proposition 28 respectively.

Proposition 7.

(a) If $G = T^*$, $\nu(d), r_0(d), r_1(d)$ and $r_2(d)$ are given by:

d	1	2	3	4	6
$\nu(d)$	1	1	8	6	8
$r_0(d)$	1	1	2	1	2
$r_1(d)$	1	1	1	1	1
$r_2(d)$	1	1	1	1	1

If $d \in \{3, 6\}$, and $g \in T^*$ is of order d then g and g^{-1} are representatives of the two conjugacy classes of elements of order g .

(b) If $G = O^*$, $\nu(d), r_0(d), r_1(d)$ and $r_2(d)$ are given by:

d	1	2	3	4	6	8
$\nu(d)$	1	1	8	18	8	12
$r_0(d)$	1	1	1	2	1	2
$r_1(d)$	1	1	1	2	1	2
$r_2(d)$	1	1	1	2	1	1

If $d = 4$, and g_1 and g_2 are elements of O^* of order 4 such that $g_1 \in T^*$ and $g_2 \notin T^*$ then g_1 and g_2 are representatives of the two conjugacy classes of elements of order 4. If $d = 8$, and $g \in T^*$ is of order 8, g and g^3 are representatives of the two conjugacy classes of elements of order 8.

(c) If $G = I^*$, $\nu(d), r_0(d), r_1(d)$ and $r_2(d)$ are given by:

d	1	2	3	4	5	6	10
$\nu(d)$	1	1	20	30	24	20	24
$r_0(d)$	1	1	1	1	2	1	2
$r_1(d)$	1	1	1	1	2	1	2
$r_2(d)$	1	1	1	1	1	1	1

If $d = 5$ (resp. $d = 10$), and $g \in T^*$ is of order d , g and g^2 (resp. g and g^3) are representatives of the two conjugacy classes of elements of order d .

Proof. Since the binary polyhedral groups have exactly one element of order 1 and of order 2, the elements of the columns for $d \in \{1, 2\}$ are all equal to 1. So we suppose that $d \geq 3$.

(a) Let $G = T^*$. We make use of the presentation of whose relations are given by the first line of (2.2). Let $d = 3$. The subgroups of T^* of order 3 are the Sylow 3-subgroups of T^* , so they are pairwise conjugate. Thus $r_2(3) = 1$, and $r_1(3) = 1$ by Lemma 6. We now compute $r_0(3)$. Let $g \in T^*$ be of order 3. Its centraliser $C_{T^*}(g)$ contains g and the central element P^2 of T^* of order 2, so $C_{T^*}(g)$ contains the cyclic subgroup $\langle gP^2 \rangle$ of order 6. Now T^* contains no element of order greater than 6, and $C_{T^*}(g)$ is cyclic by Lemma 5. It follows that $C_{T^*}(g) = \langle gP^2 \rangle$. By the orbit-stabiliser theorem, the conjugacy class of g contains 4 elements, and since T^* possesses 8 elements of order 4, we deduce that $r_0(3) = 2$. The fact that $r_1(3) = 1$ implies that g and g^{-1} belong to different conjugacy classes, so g and g^{-1} are representatives of the two conjugacy classes of elements of order 3. By adjoining P^2 to g , we see that $r_i(6) = r_i(3)$ for all $i \in \{0, 1, 2\}$.

Now let $d = 4$. The six elements of T^* of order 4 are contained in the subgroup $\langle P, Q \rangle$ isomorphic to \mathcal{Q}_8 . We have $QPQ^{-1} = P^{-1}$, so P is conjugate to P^{-1} . Further, conjugation by X permutes P, Q and PQ , so T^* contains a single conjugacy class of elements of order 4, $r_0(4) = 1$, and thus $r_1(4) = r_2(4) = 1$ by (2.3).

(b) Let $G = O^*$. First let $d = 3$. All of the elements of O^* of order 3 are contained in its subgroup T^* , and so $r_0(3) \leq 2$. From (2.2), we have the relation $RXR^{-1} = X^{-1}$, where X is of order 3. Since X and X^{-1} are representatives of the two conjugacy classes of elements of order 3 in T^* , it follows that there is a single conjugacy class of elements of order 3 in O^* , so $r_0(3) = 1$, and $r_1(3) = r_2(3) = 1$ by (2.3). Once more, the values for $d = 6$ are obtained by adjoining P^2 to X .

Now let $d = 4$. From the case $G = T^*$, the six elements of order 4 that belong to the subgroup T^* of O^* are pairwise conjugate, and since T^* is normal in O^* , they form a complete conjugacy class of elements of order 4. Now let \mathcal{U} denote the set of twelve elements of order 4 that belong to $O^* \setminus T^*$, and let $g \in \mathcal{U}$. Since $C_{O^*}(g)$ is cyclic by Lemma 5 and contains $\langle g \rangle$, it follows that $|C_{O^*}(g)| \in \{4, 8\}$. Suppose that $|C_{O^*}(g)| = 8$. Then $C_{O^*}(g) \cong \mathbb{Z}_8$, and there exists $h \in C_{O^*}(g)$ of order 8 such that $g = h^2$. But since T^* is of index 2 in O^* , it follows that $h^2 \in T^*$, which contradicts the fact that $g \notin T^*$. So $|C_{O^*}(g)| = 4$, and $C_{O^*}(g) = \langle g \rangle$. The orbit-stabiliser theorem implies that the conjugacy class of g contains twelve elements, which must be the elements of \mathcal{U} . We thus conclude that there are two conjugacy classes in O^* of elements of order 4, so $r_0(4) = 2$. It also follows that if g_1 and g_2 are elements of O^* of order 4 such that $g_1 \in T^*$ and $g_2 \notin T^*$ then g_1 and g_2 are representatives of these two conjugacy classes. If $g \in O^*$ is of order 4, then either it belongs to T^* , and then $g^{-1} \in T^*$, or it belongs to $O^* \setminus T^*$, and then $g^{-1} \in O^* \setminus T^*$. In both cases, it follows that g and g^{-1} are conjugate in O^* . Thus $r_1(4) = 2$, and hence $r_2(4) = 2$ by Lemma 6.

Finally, let $d = 8$, let $g \in O^*$ be of order 8, and let H be a Sylow 2-subgroup that contains g . Then $|H| = 16$, and since O^* has no element of order 16, it follows from Remark 3(i) that $H \cong \mathcal{Q}_{16}$. The group \mathcal{Q}_{16} contains a unique cyclic subgroup of order 8, and hence H is the only Sylow 2-subgroup that contains g . Since the Sylow 2-subgroups are pairwise conjugate, it follows that the three cyclic subgroups of order 8 are pairwise conjugate, and hence $r_2(8) = 1$. The centraliser $C_{O^*}(g)$ contains $\langle g \rangle$, and is cyclic by Lemma 5, and the fact that O^* has no element of order greater than 8 implies that $C_{O^*}(g) = \langle g \rangle$. The orbit-stabiliser theorem implies the conjugacy class of g contains 6 elements, and since O^* contains 12 elements of order 8, we conclude that $r_0(8) = 2$. Using the presentation (2.1) of \mathcal{Q}_{16} , we see that $ygy^{-1} = g^{-1}$ for all $y \in H \setminus \langle g \rangle$, so g and g^{-1} are conjugate, and it follows that

$r_1(8) = 2$ also. We also deduce that g and g^3 are representatives of the two conjugacy classes of elements of order 8.

(c) Let $G = I^*$. First suppose that $d \in \{3, 5\}$, and let $g \in I^*$ be an element of order d . Then $C_{O^*}(g)$ contains $\langle g \rangle$ and the unique element ω of I^* of order 2, and since $C_{O^*}(g)$ is cyclic by Lemma 5, we see as in the previous cases that $C_{O^*}(g) = \langle \omega g \rangle$, and $|C_{O^*}(g)| = 2d$. The orbit-stabiliser theorem then implies that the conjugacy class of g contains $60/d$ elements. If $d = 3$, this conjugacy class is the set of elements of order 3, so $r_0(3) = 1$, and hence $r_1(3) = r_2(3) = 1$ by (2.3). If $d = 5$, the conjugacy class of g contains 12 elements, from which we conclude that there are two conjugacy classes C_1 and C_2 of elements of order 5, so $r_0(5) = 2$. The subgroups of I^* of order 5 are its Sylow 5-subgroups, which are pairwise conjugate, so $r_2(5) = 1$. This also implies that each such subgroup contributes two elements to each of C_1 and C_2 . So if $g \in O^*$ is of order 5, it is conjugate to exactly one element h of $\langle g \rangle \setminus \{g\}$. Note that $h \neq g^2$ (resp. $h \neq g^{-2}$) for otherwise g would be conjugate to g^2 (resp. g^{-2}), then g^2 would be conjugate to g^{-1} (resp. to g), and the conjugacy class of g would contain at least three elements of $\langle g \rangle$, which is not possible. Hence g is conjugate to g^{-1} for every element $g \in I^*$ of order 5, but is not conjugate to g^2 or to g^{-2} . This proves that the conjugacy class of $\{g, g^{-1}\}$ is equal to that of g , and so $r_1(5) = 2$, and that g and g^2 are representatives of the two conjugacy classes of elements of order 5. Once more, if $d \in \{3, 5\}$, then $r_i(2d) = r_i(d)$ for all $i \in \{0, 1, 2\}$.

It remains to study the case $d = 4$. Let $g \in I^*$ be an element of order 4. Using once more the fact that $C_{O^*}(g)$ contains $\langle g \rangle$ and is cyclic, we see that $C_{O^*}(g) = \langle g \rangle$, and then that the conjugacy class of g contains thirty elements, which is the number of elements of I^* of order 4. So $r_0(4) = 1$, and $r_1(3) = r_2(3) = 1$ by (2.3). \square

2.3 Whitehead groups of the finite subgroups of $B_n(\mathbb{S}^2)$

If G is a finite group, recall that its *Whitehead group* $\text{Wh}(G)$ is a finitely-generated Abelian group, and so may be written in the form:

$$\text{Wh}(G) = \mathbb{Z}^r \oplus \text{SK}_1(\mathbb{Z}[G]), \quad (2.4)$$

where $\text{SK}_1(\mathbb{Z}[G])$ is isomorphic to the torsion subgroup of $\text{Wh}(G)$ [79]. The following proposition implies that to determine $\text{Wh}(G)$, where G is a finite subgroup of $B_n(\mathbb{S}^2)$, it suffices to compute r .

Proposition 8. *Let $n \in \mathbb{N}$, and let G be a finite subgroup of $B_n(\mathbb{S}^2)$. Then $\text{SK}_1(\mathbb{Z}[G])$ is trivial.*

Proof. As we mentioned in Section 2.1, any finite subgroup G of $B_n(\mathbb{S}^2)$ is cyclic, dicyclic or binary polyhedral. If G is cyclic, dicyclic of order $8m$, $m \in \mathbb{N}$, or binary polyhedral the result follows from [75, Theorem A, parts (1), (3), (5), (6) and (7)]. The only other possibility is when G is dicyclic of order $4m$, where m is odd. In this case, the Sylow p -subgroups of G are cyclic, and from [74, page 20], G admits a presentation of the Type I groups of [75, Appendix]. The result then follows from [75, Theorem A, part (2)]. \square

Remark 9. One may also prove Proposition 8 by applying [70, Theorem 14.2(i) and Example 14.4].

Consequently, if G is a finite subgroup of $B_n(\mathbb{S}^2)$, then by equation (2.4), $\text{Wh}(G)$ is a free Abelian group, and it remains to calculate its rank. This is achieved in the following proposition.

Proposition 10. *Let $n \in \mathbb{N}$, let G be a finite subgroup of $B_n(\mathbb{S}^2)$, and if $q \in \mathbb{N}$, let $\delta(q)$ denote the number of divisors of q . Then $\text{Wh}(G) \cong \mathbb{Z}^r$, where:*

$$r = \begin{cases} \lfloor \frac{m}{2} \rfloor + 1 - \delta(m) & \text{if } G \cong \mathbb{Z}_m, m \in \mathbb{N} \\ m + 1 - \delta(2m) & \text{if } G \cong \text{Dic}_{4m}, m \geq 2 \\ 0 & \text{if } G \cong \mathbb{T}^* \\ 1 & \text{if } G \cong \mathbb{O}^* \\ 2 & \text{if } G \cong \mathbb{I}^*. \end{cases}$$

Proof. Let G be isomorphic to a finite subgroup of $B_n(\mathbb{S}^2)$. We recall once more that G is cyclic, dicyclic or binary polyhedral. Let r_1 denote the number of conjugacy classes of unordered pairs $\{g, g^{-1}\}$ in G , where $g \in G$, and let r_2 be the number of conjugacy classes of cyclic subgroups of G . By [59, page 39], the rank r of $\text{Wh}(G)$ is equal to $r_1 - r_2$, and so:

$$r = \sum_{d \mid |G|} (r_1(d) - r_2(d)). \quad (2.5)$$

We treat the possibilities for G separately.

(a) $G \cong \mathbb{Z}_m$, where $m \in \mathbb{N}$. Since G is Abelian, r_1 is just the number of unordered pairs $\{g, g^{-1}\}$ in G , where g runs over the elements of G , and r_2 is the number of cyclic subgroups of G . Since $g = g^{-1}$ if and only if $\langle g \rangle \in \{1, 2\}$, we have that $r_1 = \frac{m-1}{2} + 1$ if m is odd, and $r_1 = \frac{m-2}{2} + 2$ if m is even. So $r_1 = \lfloor \frac{m}{2} \rfloor + 1$. Since the subgroups of \mathbb{Z}_m are in bijection with the divisors of m , we have $r_2 = \delta(m)$, so $r = r_1 - r_2 = \lfloor \frac{m}{2} \rfloor + 1 - \delta(m)$ as required.

(b) $G \cong \text{Dic}_{4m}$, where $m \geq 2$. Let $G = \langle x \rangle \amalg \langle x \rangle y$ be given by equation (2.1). Since the elements of $\langle x \rangle y$ are of order 4, it follows from Lemma 6 and equation (2.5) that they do not contribute to r . So we just need to consider the contributions of the elements of $\langle x \rangle$ to r_1 and r_2 . Using equation (2.1), the conjugacy classes of the elements of $\langle x \rangle$ in G are $\{x^i, x^{-i}\}$, where $0 \leq i \leq m$. Since $\langle x \rangle$ is of order $2m$, as in the cyclic case, its elements contribute $m + 1$ to the r_1 -term, and $\delta(2m)$ to the r_2 -term, and thus $r = m + 1 - \delta(2m)$.

(c) If G is binary polyhedral, the rank of $\text{Wh}(G)$ may be easily deduced using (2.5) and the tables of Proposition 7. \square

2.4 $\tilde{K}_0(\mathbb{Z}[G])$ for the finite subgroups of $B_n(\mathbb{S}^2)$

Let G be a finite group. The calculation of $\tilde{K}_0(\mathbb{Z}[G])$ is a difficult problem, even when the order of G is small. It is known that $\tilde{K}_0(\mathbb{Z}[G])$ is isomorphic to the *ideal class group* $\text{Cl}(\mathbb{Z}[G])$ of $\mathbb{Z}[G]$ [23, Section 49.11]. The following theorems summarise some results about $\tilde{K}_0(\mathbb{Z}[G])$ for certain finite groups.

Theorem 11 ([23, Corollary 50.17], [27]). *If G is Abelian then $\tilde{K}_0(\mathbb{Z}[G])$ is trivial if and only if G is either cyclic of order n , $n \in \{1, 2, \dots, 11, 13, 14, 17, 19\}$, or is isomorphic to $\mathbb{Z}_2 \oplus \mathbb{Z}_2$. If G is non Abelian and $\tilde{K}_0(\mathbb{Z}[G]) = 1$ then G is isomorphic to one of Dih_{2q} , $q \geq 3$, A_4 , S_4 or A_5 , Dih_{2q} being the dihedral group of order $2q$.*

Theorem 12 ([73, Theorems III and IV, Corollary 10.12]).

$$(a) \tilde{K}_0(\mathbb{Z}[Dic_{4m}]) \cong \begin{cases} \mathbb{Z}_2 & \text{if } m \in \{2, 3, 4, 5, 7, 8, 11\} \\ \mathbb{Z}_2^2 & \text{if } m = 9 \\ \mathbb{Z}_2^3 & \text{if } m \in \{6, 10\}. \end{cases}$$

$$(b) \tilde{K}_0(\mathbb{Z}[T^*]) \cong \mathbb{Z}_2, \tilde{K}_0(\mathbb{Z}[O^*]) \cong \mathbb{Z}_2^2 \text{ and } \tilde{K}_0(\mathbb{Z}[I^*]) \cong \mathbb{Z}_2^3.$$

In Section 2.6, we will determine the lower algebraic K -theory of the finite subgroups of $B_n(\mathbb{S}^2)$ for all $4 \leq n \leq 11$. With this in mind, we now compute $\tilde{K}_0(\mathbb{Z}[G])$ for some other finite cyclic groups. Before proving our results, we state the following result concerning the Bass cyclic units of the group ring $\mathbb{Z}[\mathbb{Z}_n]$.

Theorem 13 ([7, p. 403]). *Let G denote the cyclic group of order n . Let $n, k \in \mathbb{N}$, let $g \in \mathbb{Z}_n$ be an element of order n , and let m be a multiple of $\phi(n)$. Then $k^m \equiv 1 \pmod{n}$. Further, the Bass cyclic units are defined by:*

$$u_{k,m}(g) = (1 + g + \dots + g^{k-1})^m + \frac{1 - k^m}{n}(1 + g + \dots + g^{n-1}),$$

where k and n are relatively prime, and they generate all the units of infinite order in $\mathbb{Z}[\mathbb{Z}_n]$.

Theorem 14. *Let $G = \mathbb{Z}_n$, where $n \in \{18, 20, 22\}$. Then $\tilde{K}_0(\mathbb{Z}[G]) \cong \mathbb{Z}_3$ if $n \in \{18, 22\}$, and $\tilde{K}_0(\mathbb{Z}[G]) \cong \mathbb{Z}_2^5$ if $n = 20$.*

Proof. Let $G = \mathbb{Z}_n$, where $n \in \{18, 20, 22\}$. We make use of an appropriate Cartesian square and the associated Mayer-Vietoris sequence as follows. We begin with the Rim square associated to \mathbb{Z}_2 :

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbb{Z}[\mathbb{Z}_2] & \longrightarrow & \mathbb{Z} \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \mathbb{Z} & \longrightarrow & \mathbb{F}_2. \end{array} \tag{2.6}$$

By (2.6), we obtain the following Cartesian square:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbb{Z}[G] & \longrightarrow & \mathbb{Z}[\mathbb{Z}_{n/2}] \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \mathbb{Z}[\mathbb{Z}_{n/2}] & \longrightarrow & \mathbb{F}_2[\mathbb{Z}_{n/2}]. \end{array} \tag{2.7}$$

Proposition 8 and Theorem 11 imply that $\tilde{K}_0(\mathbb{Z}[\mathbb{Z}_{n/2}]) = 0$ and $SK_1(\mathbb{Z}[\mathbb{Z}_{n/2}]) = 0$, hence the Mayer-Vietoris sequence associated with (2.7) becomes:

$$\dots \longrightarrow U(\mathbb{Z}[\mathbb{Z}_{n/2}]) \oplus U(\mathbb{Z}[\mathbb{Z}_{n/2}]) \longrightarrow U(\mathbb{F}_2[\mathbb{Z}_{n/2}]) \longrightarrow \tilde{K}_0(\mathbb{Z}[G]) \longrightarrow 0.$$

In the rest of this proof, $U(R)$ will denote the group of Bass cyclic units of an integral group ring R . We therefore need to understand the following homomorphism:

$$U(\mathbb{Z}[\mathbb{Z}_{n/2}]) \oplus U(\mathbb{Z}[\mathbb{Z}_{n/2}]) \longrightarrow U(\mathbb{F}_2[\mathbb{Z}_{n/2}]) \quad (2.8)$$

that is induced by reduction modulo 2. If $n = 18$ (resp. $n = 22$), the ring $\mathbb{F}_2[\mathbb{Z}_{n/2}]$ is semi-simple, and is isomorphic to $\mathbb{F}_2 \oplus \mathbb{F}_2(\zeta^3) \oplus \mathbb{F}_2(\zeta)$ (resp. to $\mathbb{F}_2 \oplus \mathbb{F}_2(\zeta)$), where ζ is a primitive $(n/2)^{\text{th}}$ root of unity, and is a root of the polynomial $x^6 + x^3 + 1$ (resp. of $x^{10} + x^9 + \dots + x^2 + x + 1$). Both of these polynomials are irreducible in $\mathbb{F}_2[x]$. Recall that $\mathbb{F}_2(\zeta)$ is a field with 64 (resp. 1024) elements [19], and its group of units is cyclic of order 63 (resp. of order $1023 = 31 \cdot 11 \cdot 3$). Suppose that $n = 18$. As we mentioned, we are taking $U(\mathbb{Z}[\mathbb{Z}_9])$ to be generated by the Bass cyclic units that are of infinite order in $\mathbb{Z}[\mathbb{Z}_9]$. These cyclic units are described by Theorem 13, and are $u_{2,6}, u_{4,6}, u_{5,6}, u_{7,6}$ and $u_{8,6}$. The image of $u_{7,6}$ in $\mathbb{F}_2(\zeta)$ is:

$$\begin{aligned} (1 + \zeta + \dots + \zeta^6)^6 &= (\zeta^7 + \zeta_8)^6 = \zeta^6(1 + \zeta)^6 = \zeta^6(1 + \zeta^2)^3 \\ &= \zeta^6(1 + \zeta^2 + \zeta^4 + \zeta^6) = \zeta^6 + \zeta^8 + \zeta + \zeta^3 = 1 + \zeta + \zeta^8. \end{aligned}$$

So the image of $u_{7,6}^2$ in $\mathbb{F}_2(\zeta)$ is $1 + \zeta^2 + \zeta^7$, the image of $u_{7,6}^6$ in $\mathbb{F}_2(\zeta)$ is the image of $(u_{7,6}^2)^2 u_{7,6}^2$ in $\mathbb{F}_2(\zeta)$, which is equal to:

$$(1 + \zeta^4 + \zeta^5)(1 + \zeta^2 + \zeta^7) = 1 + \zeta^2 + \zeta^7 + \zeta^4 + \zeta^6 + \zeta^2 + \zeta^5 + \zeta^7 + \zeta^3 = \zeta^4 + \zeta^5.$$

Thus the image of $u_{7,6}^7$ in $\mathbb{F}_2(\zeta)$ is the image of $u_{7,6}^6 u_{7,6}$ in $\mathbb{F}_2(\zeta)$, which is equal to:

$$(\zeta^4 + \zeta^5)(1 + \zeta + \zeta^8) = \zeta^4 + \zeta^5 + \zeta^3 + \zeta_5 + \zeta^6 + \zeta^4 = 1.$$

Hence the image of $u_{7,6}$ in $\mathbb{F}_2(\zeta)$ is of order 7, and the image of $u_{7,6} u_{8,6}$ in $\mathbb{F}_2(\zeta)$ is of order 21. We now show that the three other cyclic units are each of order 21.

(i) $u_{2,6}$: its image in $\mathbb{F}_2(\zeta)$ is $(1 + \zeta)^6 = (1 + \zeta^2)^3 = 1 + \zeta^2 + \zeta^4 + \zeta^6$. So the image of $u_{2,6}^3$ in $\mathbb{F}_2(\zeta)$ is equal to the image of $u_{2,6}^2 u_{2,6}$ in $\mathbb{F}_2(\zeta)$, which in turn is equal to:

$$\begin{aligned} (1 + \zeta^4 + \zeta^8 + \zeta^3)(1 + \zeta^2 + \zeta^4 + \zeta^6) &= 1 + \zeta^2 + \zeta^4 + \zeta^6 + \zeta^4 + \zeta^6 + \zeta^8 + \zeta + \\ &\quad \zeta^8 + \zeta + \zeta^3 + \zeta^5 + \zeta^3 + \zeta^5 + \zeta^7 + 1 = \zeta^2 + \zeta^7. \end{aligned}$$

Hence the image of $u_{2,6}^6$ in $\mathbb{F}_2(\zeta)$ is equal to the image of $(u_{2,6}^3)^2$ in $\mathbb{F}_2(\zeta)$, which is equal to $\zeta^4 + \zeta^5$, and the image of $u_{2,6}^7$ in $\mathbb{F}_2(\zeta)$ is equal to the image of $(u_{2,6}^6) u_{2,6}$ in $\mathbb{F}_2(\zeta)$, which in turn is equal to:

$$(1 + \zeta^2 + \zeta^4 + \zeta^6)(\zeta^4 + \zeta^5) = \zeta^4 + \zeta^6 + \zeta^8 + \zeta + \zeta^5 + \zeta^7 + 1 + \zeta^2 = \zeta^3,$$

which is of order 3. It follows that the image of $u_{2,6}$ in $\mathbb{F}_2(\zeta)$ is of order 21.

(ii) The image of $u_{4,6}$ in $\mathbb{F}_2(\zeta)$ is:

$$\begin{aligned} (1 + \zeta + \zeta^2 + \zeta^3)^6 &= (1 + \zeta^2 + \zeta^4 + \zeta^6)^3 \\ &= (1 + \zeta^2 + \zeta^4 + \zeta^6)^2(1 + \zeta^2 + \zeta^4 + \zeta^6) \\ &= (1 + \zeta^4 + \zeta^8 + \zeta^3)(1 + \zeta^2 + \zeta^4 + \zeta^6) \\ &= (\zeta^2 + \zeta^3 + \zeta^4)^2 = \zeta^4 + \zeta^6 + \zeta^8 = \zeta^4(1 + \zeta^2 + \zeta^4). \end{aligned}$$

Then the image of $u_{4,6}^2$ in $\mathbb{F}_2(\zeta)$ is $\zeta^8(1 + \zeta^4 + \zeta^8) = \zeta^8 + \zeta^3 + \zeta^7 = \zeta^3(1 + \zeta^4 + \zeta^5)$, and the image of $u_{4,6}^3 = u_{4,6}^2 u_{4,6}$ in $\mathbb{F}_2(\zeta)$ is:

$$\begin{aligned} \zeta^7(1 + \zeta^2 + \zeta^4)(1 + \zeta^4 + \zeta^5) &= \zeta^7(1 + \zeta^4 + \zeta^5 + \zeta^2 + \zeta^6 + \zeta^7 + \zeta^4 + \zeta^8 + 1) \\ &= \zeta^7(\zeta^5 + \zeta^2 + \zeta^6 + \zeta^7 + \zeta^8) \\ &= \zeta^7(\zeta^6 + \zeta^7) = \zeta^4(1 + \zeta). \end{aligned}$$

Thus the image of $u_{4,6}^6 = (u_{4,6}^3)^2$ is $\zeta(1 + \zeta^7)$, and the image of $u_{4,6}^7 = u_{4,6}^6 u_{4,6}$ is:

$$\zeta^5(1 + \zeta^2 + \zeta^4)(1 + \zeta^7) = \zeta^5(1 + \zeta^2 + \zeta^4 + \zeta^7 + 1 + \zeta^2) = \zeta^6.$$

It follows that the image of $u_{4,6}$ in $\mathbb{F}_2(\zeta)$ is of order 21.

(iii) The image of $u_{5,6}$ in $\mathbb{F}_2(\zeta)$ is:

$$\begin{aligned} (1 + \zeta + \dots + \zeta^4)^6 &= (1 + \zeta^2 + \zeta^4 + \zeta^6 + \zeta^8)^3 = (\zeta^3 + \zeta^4 + \zeta^5)^3 = (1 + \zeta + \zeta^2)^3 \\ &= (1 + \zeta + \zeta^2)^2(1 + \zeta + \zeta^2) = (1 + \zeta^2 + \zeta^4)(1 + \zeta + \zeta^2) \\ &= (1 + \zeta + \zeta^2 + \zeta^2 + \zeta^3 + \zeta^4 + \zeta^4 + \zeta^5 + \zeta^6) = \zeta(1 + \zeta^4). \end{aligned}$$

So the image of $u_{5,6}^3$ in $\mathbb{F}_2(\zeta)$ is $\zeta^3(1 + \zeta^4 + \zeta^8 + \zeta^3) = \zeta^3 + \zeta^7 + \zeta^2 + \zeta^6 = 1 + \zeta^2 + \zeta^7$, and the image of $u_{5,6}^6 = (u_{5,6}^3)^2$ is $1 + \zeta^4 + \zeta^5$. Hence the image of $u_{5,6}^7 = u_{5,6}^6 u_{5,6}$ is:

$$(1 + \zeta^4 + \zeta^5)\zeta(1 + \zeta^4) = \zeta(1 + \zeta^4 + \zeta^5 + \zeta^4 + \zeta^8 + 1) = \zeta(\zeta^5 + \zeta^8) = \zeta^3.$$

It follows that the image of $u_{5,6}$ in $\mathbb{F}_2(\zeta)$ is of order 21.

We conclude that the image in $\mathbb{F}_2(\zeta)$ of the subgroup generated by the cyclic units is of order 21. Hence the cokernel in (2.8) is of order 3, and from that equation we see that $\tilde{K}_0(\mathbb{Z}[\mathbb{Z}_{18}]) \cong \mathbb{Z}_3$, thus proving the result in the case $n = 18$. The proofs in the cases $n = 20$ and $n = 22$ are similar. First suppose that $n = 22$. As above, we see that the Bass cyclic units are of the form $u_{k,10}$ for $k = 2, 3, 4, \dots, 10$, and making use of a Mathematica [67] routine written by José Hernandez (CCM-UNAM), to whom we are grateful, one may check that the image in $\mathbb{F}_2(\zeta)$ of the subgroup generated by the cyclic units is of order 341, and that the cokernel of (2.8) is of order 3, so once more, $\tilde{K}_0(\mathbb{Z}[\mathbb{Z}_{22}]) \cong \mathbb{Z}_3$. Finally, suppose that $n = 20$. In this case, the ring $\mathbb{F}_2[\mathbb{Z}_{10}]$ is not semi-simple. It is isomorphic to $\mathbb{F}_2[x]/(x^5 - 1)^2$, and its group of units is isomorphic to the direct product $U(\mathbb{F}_2[\mathbb{Z}_{10}]) = (\mathbb{Z}_2)^5 \times \mathbb{Z}_3 \times \mathbb{Z}_5$. Applying the Mathematica routine once more to the cyclic units $u_{3,4}, u_{7,4}$ and $u_{9,4}$, we see that the image of the group generated by these units in (2.8) is of order 15, and hence the cokernel of (2.8) is isomorphic to \mathbb{Z}_2^5 . This completes the proof of the theorem. \square

2.5 $K_{-1}(\mathbb{Z}[G])$ for the finite subgroups of $B_n(\mathbb{S}^2)$

Let G be a finite subgroup of $B_n(\mathbb{S}^2)$. In order to determine $K_{-1}(\mathbb{Z}[G])$, we shall use the following special case of a result of Carter. Similar results have recently been obtained independently by B. Magurn in [65] for generalised quaternion and binary polyhedral groups.

First we recall that a simple Artinian ring A is isomorphic to $\mathcal{M}_n(D)$ for some positive integer n and some skew field D . Further, D is finite dimensional over its centre E , the dimension being a square $[D : E]$, and the Schur index of A is equal to $\sqrt{[D : E]}$ [22, Section 27].

Theorem 15 ([15, Theorem 1]). *Let G be a finite group of order q . Then*

$$K_{-1}(\mathbb{Z}[G]) \cong \mathbb{Z}^r \oplus \mathbb{Z}_2^s, \quad (2.9)$$

where r is given by

$$r = 1 - r_{\mathbb{Q}} + \sum_{p \mid |G|} (r_{\mathbb{Q}_p} - r_{\mathbb{F}_p}), \quad (2.10)$$

$r_{\mathbb{Q}}$ (resp. $r_{\mathbb{Q}_p}$, $r_{\mathbb{F}_p}$) denotes the number of isomorphism classes of irreducible \mathbb{Q} - (resp. \mathbb{Q}_p -, \mathbb{F}_p -) representations of G , and s is equal to the number of simple components of $\mathbb{Q}[G]$ that have even Schur index m but have odd local Schur indices $m_{\mathbb{Q}}$ at every finite prime \mathbb{Q} of the centre which divides q .

So to calculate $K_{-1}(\mathbb{Z}[G])$, we must determine the quantities r_F for the various fields appearing in equation (2.10), as well as the number s . For the finite subgroups G of $B_n(\mathbb{S}^2)$, we divide this calculation into two parts. In Section 2.5.1, we determine r , which yields the torsion of $K_{-1}(\mathbb{Z}[G])$. In Section 2.5.2, we compute s , which is the rank of $K_{-1}(\mathbb{Z}[G])$. We then obtain $K_{-1}(\mathbb{Z}[G])$ from (2.9).

2.5.1 Torsion of $K_{-1}(\mathbb{Z}[G])$ for finite subgroups of $B_n(\mathbb{S}^2)$

Let G be a finite subgroup of $B_n(\mathbb{S}^2)$, and let s be as defined in equation (2.9). As remarked in [15, page 1928], a consequence of Theorem 15 is that $K_{-1}(\mathbb{Z}[G])$ is torsion free if G is Abelian. In particular, if G is cyclic, then $s = 0$. If G is non cyclic, then as we shall see, $K_{-1}(\mathbb{Z}[G])$ may have torsion. Although equation (2.9) clearly allows for this possibility, this appears to be a new phenomenon, and contrasts with the calculations given in [60, 63] for example. We thus require new techniques to calculate the torsion of $K_{-1}(\mathbb{Z}[G])$. If G is dicyclic, we make use of results due to Yamada concerning the computation of the (local) Schur indices of the simple components of $\mathbb{Q}[G]$ [85]. If G is binary polyhedral, then one may apply induction/restriction techniques and the Mackey formula.

Assume first that $G \cong \text{Dic}_{4m}$ is dicyclic, where $m \geq 3$ is odd. If m is an odd prime then we determine $K_{-1}(\mathbb{Z}[\text{Dic}_{4m}])$. In principle, our method should apply to any odd value of m , not just for prime values. If m is odd, the Wedderburn decomposition over \mathbb{Q} of the algebra $\mathbb{Q}[\text{Dic}_{4m}]$ is given in [22, Example 7.40]:

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbb{Q}[\text{Dic}_{4m}] &\cong \mathbb{Q}[\text{Dih}_{2m}] \oplus \mathbb{Q}(i) \oplus \left(\bigoplus_{d_0 \mid m, d_0 > 1} \mathbb{H}_{2d_0} \right) \\ &\cong \mathbb{Q}^2 \oplus \left(\bigoplus_{d \mid m, d > 2} \mathcal{M}_2 \left(\mathbb{Q} \left(\zeta_d + \zeta_d^{-1} \right) \right) \right) \oplus \mathbb{Q}(i) \oplus \left(\bigoplus_{d_0 \mid m, d_0 > 1} \mathbb{H}_{2d_0} \right), \end{aligned} \quad (2.11)$$

where ζ_d is a primitive d^{th} root of unity, and

$$\mathbb{H}_d = E_d \oplus E_d i \oplus E_d j \oplus E_d k \quad (2.12)$$

is the quaternion skew field with centre $E_d = \mathbb{Q} \left(\zeta_d + \zeta_d^{-1} \right)$. In particular, if $m = \mu$ is prime then

$$\mathbb{Q}[\text{Dic}_{4\mu}] \cong \mathbb{Q}^2 \oplus \mathcal{M}_2(E_{\mu}) \oplus \mathbb{Q}(i) \oplus \mathbb{H}_{2\mu}. \quad (2.13)$$

Note that the number of components in equation (2.13) is equal to the number of conjugacy classes of cyclic subgroups of $\text{Dic}_{4\mu}$, and that the components are in one-to-one correspondence with the irreducible \mathbb{Q} -representations of $\text{Dic}_{4\mu}$. The first four components of equation (2.13) are matrix rings over fields, and so their Schur index is equal to one. By equation (2.9), the torsion of $K_{-1}(\mathbb{Z}[\text{Dic}_{4\mu}])$ is then either trivial or equal to \mathbb{Z}_2 depending on the Schur and local Schur indices of the remaining component $\mathbb{H}_{2\mu}$. We now determine precisely this torsion using results of Yamada [84, 85].

Proposition 16. *If μ be an odd prime, the torsion of $K_{-1}(\mathbb{Z}[\text{Dic}_{4\mu}])$ is trivial if $\mu \equiv 3 \pmod{4}$, and is equal to \mathbb{Z}_2 if $\mu \equiv 1 \pmod{4}$.*

Proof. We apply the results of [84, 85], and refer the reader to these papers for the notation used in this proof. If $n \in \mathbb{N}$ and $w \in \mathbb{Z}$ is coprime with n , then $w \pmod{\times n}$ will denote w as an element of the multiplicative group of integers modulo n . With the notation of [85, Proposition 4], we have $m = 2\mu$, $r = 2\mu - 1$, $s = 2$, $h = \mu$ and u is the order of $2\mu - 1 \pmod{\times 2\mu}$, so $u = s = 2$. From [85, Example 3, Section 6], there are representations of $\text{Dic}_{4\mu}$ of the form $U_{\alpha,0}^{(2)}$, where $0 \leq \alpha \leq 2\mu - 1$. Such representations are defined in [85, equation (8), p. 214] and induced by linear characters. Using [85, Proposition 5], the representation $U_{1,0}^{(2)}$ gives rise to an irreducible representation of $\mathbb{Q}[\text{Dic}_{4\mu}]$, and the last part of [85, Example 3, Section 6] implies that its Schur index is equal to two. Since the Schur index of each of the first four components of equation (2.13) is equal to one, it follows that the simple component $\mathbb{H}_{2\mu}$ of $\mathbb{Q}[\text{Dic}_{4\mu}]$ corresponds to $U_{1,0}^{(2)}$.

We now apply [85, Proposition 9] to $U_{1,0}^{(2)}$. Within our framework, the enveloping algebra $\text{env}_{\mathbb{Q}}(U_{1,0}^{(2)})$ with respect to \mathbb{Q} is isomorphic to the simple component $\mathbb{H}_{2\mu}$, and the centre $E_{2\mu}$ of $\mathbb{H}_{2\mu}$ is isomorphic to $\mathbb{Q}(\chi_{1,0}^{(2)})$, $\chi_{1,0}^{(2)}$ being the character of $U_{1,0}^{(2)}$ [84, Introduction]. With the notation of [85, Proposition 9], we have $d_1 = \frac{2\mu}{\gcd(2\mu,1)} = 2\mu$ and $v_1 = \frac{2\mu}{\gcd(2\mu,\mu)} = 2$. Let \mathfrak{p} be a finite prime of the centre E_{μ} of $\mathbb{H}_{2\mu}$ that divides 4μ . Then \mathfrak{p} divides 2μ , and since μ is odd, \mathfrak{p} divides p , where $p \in \{2, \mu\}$. We distinguish these two possibilities, the notation being that of [85, Proposition 9].

(a) Suppose that \mathfrak{p} divides 2. Then we have $p = 2$, $b = z = 1$, $a = 1$ and t' is the order of $2\mu - 1 \pmod{\times \mu}$, so $t' = 2$. Thus $e_{\mathfrak{p}} = 1$, and hence $c_{\mathfrak{p}} = \Lambda_{\mathfrak{p}} = 1$.

(b) Suppose that \mathfrak{p} divides μ . Then $p = \mu$, $b = 0$, $z = 2$, $a = 1$, $\langle 2\mu - 1 \pmod{\times 2} \rangle = \langle \mu \pmod{\times 2} \rangle = \{1\}$, $f = \tilde{f} = t' = 1$, $q = \mu$, $e_{\mathfrak{p}} = 2$, $c_{\mathfrak{p}} = \gcd(2, \mu - 1) = 2$ and

$$\Lambda_{\mathfrak{p}} = \frac{2}{\gcd\left(2, \frac{\mu-1}{2}\right)} = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if } \mu \equiv 1 \pmod{4} \\ 2 & \text{if } \mu \equiv 3 \pmod{4} \end{cases}$$

by [85, Proposition 9(II)].

Thus if $\mu \equiv 1 \pmod{4}$, the simple component $\mathbb{H}_{2\mu}$ of $\mathbb{Q}[G]$ whose Schur index is equal to two satisfies the property that its local Schur indices at every finite prime of the centre are odd. Hence the integer s of equation (2.9) is equal to one, so the torsion of $K_{-1}(\mathbb{Z}[G])$ is \mathbb{Z}_2 . If $\mu \equiv 3 \pmod{4}$ then $\Lambda_{\mathfrak{p}} = 2$ for any finite prime \mathfrak{p} that divides μ , so $s = 0$, and hence $K_{-1}(\mathbb{Z}[G])$ is torsion free. \square

As another example, we calculate the torsion of $K_{-1}(\mathbb{Z}[\text{Dic}_{4m}])$ in the case where m is a power of 2 (so Dic_{4m} is a generalised quaternion group).

Proposition 17. *The torsion of $K_{-1}(\mathbb{Z}[\mathcal{Q}_{2^k}])$ is trivial if $k = 3$, and is equal to \mathbb{Z}_2 if $k \geq 4$.*

Proof. Let $k \geq 3$. Then $\text{Dic}_{2^k} = \mathcal{Q}_{2^k}$. From [22, Example 7.40, case 1],

$$\mathbb{Q}[\mathcal{Q}_{2^k}] \cong \mathbb{Q}[\text{Dih}_{2^{k-1}}] \oplus \mathbb{H}_{2^{k-1}}, \quad (2.14)$$

where $\mathbb{H}_{2^{k-1}}$ is the quaternion skew field defined by equation (2.12). Using [22, Example 7.39], each simple component of $\mathbb{Q}[\text{Dih}_{2^{k-2}}]$ is a matrix ring over a field, and so its Schur index is equal to one. As in the proof of Proposition 16, one may show that the Schur index of the remaining simple component $\mathbb{H}_{2^{k-1}}$ of equation (2.14) is equal to two, and that this component corresponds to the irreducible representation $U_{1,0}^{(2)}$. To study the local Schur index $\Lambda_{\mathfrak{p}}$ of each finite prime \mathfrak{p} dividing the centre $E_{2^{k-1}}$ of the simple component $\mathbb{H}_{2^{k-1}}$, we again apply [84, Proposition 9]. With the same notation, we have $m = 2^{k-1}$, $r = 2^{k-1} - 1$, $u = s = 2$, $h = 2^{k-2}$, $d_1 = 2^{k-1}$ and $v_1 = 2$. If \mathfrak{p} does not divide 2^{k-1} then $\Lambda_{\mathfrak{p}} = 1$ by [84, Proposition 9(I)]. So suppose that \mathfrak{p} divides 2^{k-1} . With the notation of [84, Proposition 9(II)], $b = z = 1$ and $p = 2$. If $k = 3$ then we are in the exceptional case of [84, Proposition 9(II)], so $\Lambda_{\mathfrak{p}} = 2$. Thus there exists a finite prime of the centre $E_{2^{k-1}}$ of $\mathbb{H}_{2^{k-1}}$ dividing 2^k with even local Schur index, and it follows from Theorem 15 that the torsion of $K_{-1}(\mathbb{Z}[\mathcal{Q}_8])$ is trivial. Assume then that $k \geq 4$. So $f = \tilde{f} = t' = 1$ and $e_{\mathfrak{p}} = q = 2$, thus $c_{\mathfrak{p}} = \Lambda_{\mathfrak{p}} = 1$. Then the simple component $\mathbb{H}_{2^{k-1}}$ of $\mathbb{Q}[\mathcal{Q}_{2^k}]$ whose Schur index is equal to two satisfies the property that its local Schur indices at every finite prime of the centre dividing 2^k are odd. Hence the integer s of equation (2.9) is equal to one, and thus the torsion of $K_{-1}(\mathbb{Z}[\mathcal{Q}_{2^k}])$ is equal to \mathbb{Z}_2 as required. \square

Now let G be a binary polyhedral group. We recall that a group is said to be *2-hyper-elementary* if it is a semi-direct product of a cyclic normal subgroup of odd order and a 2-group. Since G is not itself 2-hyper-elementary, induction/restriction techniques may be used to calculate the torsion of $K_{-1}(\mathbb{Z}[G])$.

Proposition 18. *The torsion of $K_{-1}(\mathbb{Z}[G])$ is trivial if $G \cong T^*$, and is equal to \mathbb{Z}_2 if $G \cong O^*$ or $G \cong I^*$.*

Proof. Let G be a binary polyhedral group. Applying [15, Theorem 3(iii) and page 1936], we have the composition

$$\bigoplus_H K_{-1}(\mathbb{Z}[H]) \xrightarrow{\text{ind}} K_{-1}(\mathbb{Z}[G]) \xrightarrow{\text{res}} \bigoplus_H K_{-1}(\mathbb{Z}[H]), \quad (2.15)$$

where ind and res are the usual induction and restriction maps that are surjective and injective respectively when restricted to the corresponding torsion subgroups, and H runs over the conjugacy classes of the 2-hyper-elementary subgroups of G [15, Theorem 3(iii) and p. 1936]. Restricting to these torsion subgroups, we see that the torsion of $K_{-1}(\mathbb{Z}[G])$ injects into that of $\bigoplus_H K_{-1}(\mathbb{Z}[H])$. The non-trivial 2-hyper-elementary subgroups of T^* are $\mathbb{Z}_2, \mathbb{Z}_3, \mathbb{Z}_4, \mathbb{Z}_6$ and \mathcal{Q}_8 , those of O^* are $\mathbb{Z}_2, \mathbb{Z}_3, \mathbb{Z}_4, \mathbb{Z}_6, \mathbb{Z}_8, \text{Dic}_{12}, \mathcal{Q}_8$ and \mathcal{Q}_{16} , and those of I^* are $\mathbb{Z}_2, \mathbb{Z}_4, \mathbb{Z}_6, \mathbb{Z}_{10}, \mathcal{Q}_8, \text{Dic}_{12}$ and Dic_{20} (see [73, Lemma 14.3] and [47, Proposition 85]). If $m \in \mathbb{N}$, the group algebra $\mathbb{Q}[\mathbb{Z}_m]$ splits [22, Example 7.38], so the torsion of $K_{-1}(\mathbb{Z}[\mathbb{Z}_m])$ is

trivial [15, page 1928]. Further, by Propositions 16 and 17, the torsion of $K_{-1}(\mathbb{Z}[\mathcal{Q}_8])$ and of $K_{-1}(\mathbb{Z}[\text{Dic}_{12}])$ is also trivial, and setting $L = \mathcal{Q}_{16}$ (resp. $L = \text{Dic}_{20}$) if $G = \mathcal{O}^*$ (resp. $G = \mathcal{I}^*$), the torsion of $K_{-1}(\mathbb{Z}[L])$ is \mathbb{Z}_2 . The injectivity of res in equation (2.15) implies that the torsion of $K_{-1}(\mathbb{Z}[\Gamma^*])$ is trivial, which gives the result in this case.

So let $G = \mathcal{O}^*$ or \mathcal{I}^* , and let L be as defined above. Now G possesses a single conjugacy class of subgroups isomorphic to L [73, Lemma 14.3], and since L is the only subgroup of G for which the torsion of $K_{-1}(\mathbb{Z}[L])$ is non trivial, we need only to consider the restriction of equation (2.15) to the factor $H = L$:

$$K_{-1}(\mathbb{Z}[L]) \xrightarrow{\text{ind}} K_{-1}(\mathbb{Z}[G]) \xrightarrow{\text{res}} K_{-1}(\mathbb{Z}[L]). \quad (2.16)$$

It thus suffices to show that the restriction of (2.16) to the corresponding torsion subgroups is the identity. Now $K_{-1}(\cdot)$ is a Mackey functor [70, Theorem 11.2], so we may apply Mackey's formula that describes the composition (2.16) as the sum of the maps:

$$K_{-1}(\mathbb{Z}[L]) \xrightarrow{\text{res}} K_{-1}(\mathbb{Z}[x_i^{-1}Lx_i \cap L]) \xrightarrow{c_{x_i}} K_{-1}(\mathbb{Z}[L]), \quad (2.17)$$

where $G = \coprod Lx_iL$ is a double coset decomposition of G , and the map c_{x_i} is induced by the homomorphism $x_i^{-1}Lx_i \cap L \rightarrow L$ defined by $y \mapsto x_iyx_i^{-1}$ [70, Section 11a]. Let $N_G(L)$ denote the normaliser of L in G . If $x_i \notin N_G(L)$ then the torsion of $K_{-1}(\mathbb{Z}[x_i^{-1}Lx_i \cap L])$ is trivial, and the corresponding map (2.17) contributes zero to the restriction of (2.16) to the torsion subgroups. If on the other hand, $x_i \in N_G(L)$, the corresponding map (2.17) is an isomorphism. Now $L \subset N_G(L) \subset G$, and since L is not normal in G and G has no proper subgroup that strictly contains L [47, Proposition 85], it follows that $N_G(L) = L$. So there is only one double coset representative x_i that belongs to $N_G(L)$, and for this x_i , it follows that the restriction of (2.16) to the torsion subgroups is equal to the restriction of the isomorphism (2.17) to the torsion subgroups. Since the torsion of $K_{-1}(\mathbb{Z}[L])$ is \mathbb{Z}_2 , the same conclusion holds for $K_{-1}(\mathbb{Z}[G])$. \square

Remarks 19.

(a) The induction/restriction arguments in the proof of Proposition 18 were inspired by those given in [73, Paragraph 14] for the \tilde{K}_0 -groups.

(b) Let $G = \mathcal{O}^*$ or \mathcal{I}^* . We sketch an alternative proof of the fact that $K_{-1}(\mathbb{Z}[G])$ has non-trivial torsion that uses [73, Proposition 4.11]. The embedding of G in the Hamilton quaternions \mathbb{H} [20, Chapter 7] induces an algebra homomorphism $\psi_G: \mathbb{Q}[G] \rightarrow \mathbb{H}$. By [73, Proposition 4.11 and its proof], $\psi_G(\mathbb{Z}[G])$ is a maximal order Γ_G that is completely described in [73, page 79], from which one may prove that $\text{Im}(\psi_G)$ is equal to \mathbb{H}_d , where $d = 8$ (resp. $d = 5$) if $G = \mathcal{O}^*$ (resp. $G = \mathcal{I}^*$), in other words, \mathbb{H}_d appears as a factor in the Wedderburn decomposition of $\mathbb{Q}[G]$. On the other hand, from equation (2.14) (resp. equation (2.13)), we know that \mathbb{H}_d also appears in the Wedderburn decomposition of $\mathbb{Q}[\mathcal{Q}_{16}]$ (resp. $\mathbb{Q}[\text{Dic}_{20}]$), and from the proof of Proposition 17 (resp. Proposition 16), that it contributes a \mathbb{Z}_2 -term to the torsion of $\mathbb{K}_{-1}(\mathbb{Z}[\mathcal{Q}_{16}])$ (resp. $\mathbb{K}_{-1}(\mathbb{Z}[\text{Dic}_{20}])$). It follows then from [15, Theorem 1] that $K_{-1}(\mathbb{Z}[G])$ has non-trivial torsion.

(c) Using the GAP package Wedderga [14], one may obtain the complete Wedderburn decomposition for the binary polyhedral groups:

$$\mathbb{Q}[\mathbb{T}^*] \cong \mathbb{Q} \oplus \mathbb{Q}(\zeta_3) \oplus \mathcal{M}_3(\mathbb{Q}) \oplus \mathbb{H}_4 \oplus \mathbb{H}(\mathbb{Q}(\zeta_3)) \quad (2.18)$$

$$\mathbb{Q}[\mathbb{O}^*] \cong \mathbb{Q}^2 \oplus \mathcal{M}_2(\mathbb{Q}) \oplus 2\mathcal{M}_3(\mathbb{Q}) \oplus \mathbb{H}_8 \oplus \mathcal{M}_2(\widehat{\mathbb{H}}), \text{ and} \quad (2.19)$$

$$\mathbb{Q}[\mathbb{I}^*] \cong \mathbb{Q} \oplus \mathcal{M}_4(\mathbb{Q}) \oplus \mathbb{H}_5 \oplus \mathcal{M}_2(\widehat{\mathbb{H}}) \oplus \mathcal{M}_5(\mathbb{Q}) \oplus \mathcal{M}_3(\mathbb{H}(\mathbb{Q})) \oplus \mathcal{M}_3(\mathbb{Q}(\sqrt{5})), \quad (2.20)$$

where $\widehat{\mathbb{H}}$ is the quaternion algebra $(-1, -3)/\mathbb{Q}$. This algebra admits a basis $\{1, i, j, k\}$ as a \mathbb{Q} -vector space, and the algebra multiplication satisfies $ij = -ji = k$, $i^2 = -1$ and $j^2 = -3$. Somewhat surprisingly, we were not able to find the decompositions (2.18)–(2.20) in the literature.

In order to prove Theorem 31 and to obtain Table 2.1 given on page 34, we will need to calculate $K_{-1}(\mathbb{Z}[G])$ for some other dicyclic groups, namely $G = \text{Dic}_{4\mu}$, where $\mu \in \{6, 9, 10\}$. We now compute the torsion of $K_{-1}(\mathbb{Z}[\text{Dic}_{4\mu}])$ for $\mu = 9$, as well as the case where $\mu = 2\tau$, where τ is an odd prime, which includes the cases $\mu = 6$ and $\mu = 10$.

Proposition 20.

- (a) If $\mu = 2\tau$, where τ is an odd prime, then the torsion of $K_{-1}(\mathbb{Z}[\text{Dic}_{4\mu}])$ is \mathbb{Z}_2 .
 (b) The group $K_{-1}(\mathbb{Z}[\text{Dic}_{36}])$ is torsion free.

Proof.

(a) Let $\mu = 2\tau$, where τ is an odd prime. From [22, Example 7.40] or [73, pp. 75–76], and using (2.11) and the notation of Section 2.5.1, we have:

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbb{Q}[\text{Dic}_{4\mu}] &\cong \mathbb{Q}[\text{Dic}_{8\tau}] \\ &\cong \mathbb{Q}^4 \oplus \left(\bigoplus_{d \in \{\tau, 2\tau\}} \mathcal{M}_2 \left(\mathbb{Q} \left(\zeta_d + \zeta_d^{-1} \right) \right) \right) \oplus \mathbb{H}_4 \oplus \mathbb{H}_{4\tau}. \end{aligned} \quad (2.21)$$

The first three factors of equation (2.21) are matrix rings over fields, so their Schur index is equal to one. Further, the factor \mathbb{H}_4 appears in the Wedderburn decomposition of the \mathbb{Q} -algebra $\mathbb{Q}[\mathbb{T}^*]$, and since $K_{-1}(\mathbb{Z}[\mathbb{T}^*])$ is torsion free by Proposition 18, \mathbb{H}_4 does not contribute to the torsion of $K_{-1}(\mathbb{Z}[\text{Dic}_{4\mu}])$. It remains to determine the Schur and local Schur indices of the remaining factor $\mathbb{H}_{4\tau}$. Once more, we follow the proof of Proposition 16, and we use the results and notation of [84, 85], taking $m = 4\tau$, $r = 4\tau - 1$, $h = 2\tau$, and $u = s = 2$. Using [85, Proposition 5], the representation $U_{1,0}^{(2)}$ gives rise to an irreducible representation of $\mathbb{Q}[\text{Dic}_{4\mu}]$, and the last part of [85, Example 3, Section 6] implies that its Schur index is equal to two. Since the Schur index of each of the first four components of equation (2.21) is equal to one, it follows that the simple component $\mathbb{H}_{4\tau}$ of $\mathbb{Q}[\text{Dic}_{4\mu}]$ corresponds to $U_{1,0}^{(2)}$. With the notation of [85, Proposition 9], we have $d_1 = 4\tau$ and $v_1 = 2$. Let \mathfrak{p} be a finite prime of the centre of $\mathbb{H}_{4\tau}$ that divides 4τ . Then \mathfrak{p} divides 2 or τ . If $\mathfrak{p} \mid 2$, then $p = 2$. We are not in the exceptional case of [85, Proposition 9(II)] since the order of r in \mathbb{Z}_τ^* is equal to 2. Further, $a = 2$, and t' is equal to the order of $4\tau - 1$ in \mathbb{Z}_τ^* , so $t' = 2$. If $\mathfrak{p} \mid \tau$, then $p = \tau$, $a = 1$, and t' is equal to the order of $4\tau - 1$ in \mathbb{Z}_4^* , so $t' = 2$ also. So in both cases $e_{\mathfrak{p}} = s/t' = 1$, hence $c_{\mathfrak{p}} = \Lambda_{\mathfrak{p}} = 1$. Thus the simple component $\mathbb{H}_{4\tau}$ of $\mathbb{Q}[\text{Dic}_{4\mu}]$ whose Schur index is equal to two satisfies the property

that its local Schur indices at every finite prime of the centre are odd. Hence the integer s of equation (2.9) is equal to one, and therefore the torsion of $K_{-1}(\mathbb{Z}[\text{Dic}_{4\mu}])$ is \mathbb{Z}_2 .

(b) By (2.11), the Wedderburn decomposition of the \mathbb{Q} -algebra $\mathbb{Q}[\text{Dic}_{36}]$ is given by:

$$\mathbb{Q}[\text{Dic}_{36}] \cong \mathbb{Q}^2 \oplus \mathcal{M}_2(E_3) \oplus \mathcal{M}_2(E_9) \oplus \mathbb{Q}(i) \oplus \mathbb{H}_6 \oplus \mathbb{H}_{18}. \quad (2.22)$$

The first four factors of equation (2.22) are matrix rings over fields, so their Schur index is equal to one. Further, the factor \mathbb{H}_6 also appears in the Wedderburn decomposition of the \mathbb{Q} -algebra $\mathbb{Q}[\text{Dic}_{12}]$, and since $K_{-1}(\mathbb{Z}[\text{Dic}_{12}])$ is torsion free by Proposition 16, \mathbb{H}_6 does not contribute to the torsion of $K_{-1}(\mathbb{Z}[\text{Dic}_{36}])$. It thus suffices to determine the Schur and local Schur indices of the remaining factor \mathbb{H}_{18} . Following the proof of Proposition 16, we obtain $m = d_1 = 18$, $\mu = h = 9$, $r = 17$ and $u = s = v_1 = 2$, and the representation $U_{1,0}^{(2)}$ gives rise to an irreducible representation of $\mathbb{Q}[\text{Dic}_{36}]$ whose Schur index is equal to two. Since the Schur index of each of the first four components of equation (2.13) is equal to one, it follows that the simple component \mathbb{H}_{18} of $\mathbb{Q}[\text{Dic}_{36}]$ corresponds to $U_{1,0}^{(2)}$. If \mathfrak{p} is a finite prime of the centre E_9 of \mathbb{H}_{18} that divides 36, then \mathfrak{p} divides 6, and hence \mathfrak{p} divides p , where $p \in \{2, 3\}$. If $\mathfrak{p} \mid 3$, then $p = q = 3$, $b = 0$, $z = a = e_{\mathfrak{p}} = c_{\mathfrak{p}} = 2$, $t' = \tilde{f} = f = 1$, and $\Lambda_{\mathfrak{p}} = 2$. Thus the Schur index of the simple component \mathbb{H}_{18} of the decomposition (2.22) of $\mathbb{Q}[\text{Dic}_{36}]$ is equal to 2, but its local Schur indices at every finite prime of the centre of \mathbb{H}_{18} are not always odd. It follows from Theorem 15 that $K_{-1}(\mathbb{Z}[\text{Dic}_{36}])$ is torsion free. \square

2.5.2 The rank of $K_{-1}(\mathbb{Z}[G])$ for the finite subgroups of $B_n(\mathbb{S}^2)$

Let G be a finite subgroup of $B_n(\mathbb{S}^2)$. To calculate the rank of $K_{-1}(\mathbb{Z}[G])$, we shall apply equation (2.10). In each case, we will thus need to calculate the number r_F of distinct irreducible $F[G]$ -modules, where F is equal respectively to \mathbb{Q} , \mathbb{Q}_p and \mathbb{F}_p . Before doing so, we recall the requisite theory (see [22, pages 492 and 508] or [70, pages 25–26]).

Let F be a field of characteristic $p \geq 0$, where p is prime if $p > 0$. If G is a finite group of exponent m , let:

$$\hat{m} = \begin{cases} m & \text{if } p = 0 \\ m/p^a & \text{if } p > 0, \text{ where } a \text{ is the largest power of } p \text{ that divides } m. \end{cases}$$

Let $F(\zeta_{\hat{m}})$ be a field extension of F by a primitive \hat{m} th root of unity, which we denote by $\zeta_{\hat{m}}$. Then $F(\zeta_{\hat{m}})$ is a Galois extension of F , whose Galois group, denoted by $\text{Gal}(F(\zeta_{\hat{m}})/F)$, is given by:

$$\text{Gal}(F(\zeta_{\hat{m}})/F) = \{ \phi: F(\zeta_{\hat{m}}) \longrightarrow F(\zeta_{\hat{m}}) \mid \phi \text{ is an automorphism and } \phi(z) = z \text{ for all } z \in F \}.$$

Each automorphism $\sigma \in \text{Gal}(F(\zeta_{\hat{m}})/F)$ is uniquely determined by its action on $\zeta_{\hat{m}}$, and is given by $\sigma(\zeta_{\hat{m}}) = \zeta_{\hat{m}}^t$, where t is an integer that is uniquely defined modulo \hat{m} . Hence t corresponds to an element of the multiplicative group of units $\mathbb{Z}_{\hat{m}}^*$, and there is an injective group homomorphism:

$$\begin{cases} \phi: \text{Gal}(F(\zeta_{\hat{m}})/F) \longrightarrow \mathbb{Z}_{\hat{m}}^* \\ \sigma \longmapsto t, \end{cases} \quad (2.23)$$

defined by $\phi(\sigma) = t$. We now recall the definition of F -conjugacy class.

(a) If f, g are elements of G , we say that they are F -conjugate if there exists $t \in \text{Im}(\phi)$ and $\alpha \in G$ such that $f^t = \alpha g \alpha^{-1}$. The F -conjugacy relation is an equivalence relation on G , and the F -equivalence class of f in G will be denoted by $[f]_F$.

(b) Let

$$G'_p = \{g \in G \mid \gcd(p, o(g)) = 1\},$$

be the set of p -regular elements of G , where $o(g)$ denotes the order of $g \in G$. An F -conjugacy class of G is said to be p -regular if it is contained in G'_p .

If $f \in G$ then we denote its usual conjugacy class by $[f]$.

Remarks 21.

(a) It follows from the definition that

$$[f]_F = \bigcup_{t \in \text{Im}(\phi)} [f^t], \quad (2.24)$$

in other words, an F -conjugacy class is a union of normal conjugacy classes. In particular, $[f]_F \supset [f]$. Further, the number of F -conjugacy classes of elements of order n is bounded above by the number of usual conjugacy classes of elements of order n .

(b) If $F = \mathbb{Q}$ then ϕ is an isomorphism [70, Theorem 1.5], and $f, g \in G$ are F -conjugate if and only if $\langle f \rangle$ and $\langle g \rangle$ are conjugate subgroups of G .

By the Witt-Berman Theorem, we have the following result that will be used to compute r_F for our groups.

Theorem 22 ([22, Theorems 21.5 and 21.25]). *Let G be a finite group, and let F be a field of characteristic $p \geq 0$, where p is prime if $p > 0$.*

(a) *If $p = 0$, then r_F is equal to the number of F -conjugacy classes in G .*

(b) *If $p > 0$, then r_F is equal to the number of p -regular F -conjugacy classes in G .*

We also need the following results concerning the structure of the Galois groups.

Theorem 23 ([72]). *Suppose that n is odd or divisible by 4. Then $\mathbb{Q}_p(\zeta_n)/\mathbb{Q}_p$ is a Galois extension of \mathbb{Q}_p , and its Galois group G is as follows.*

(a) *If p does not divide n then G is cyclic, and there exists an element $\sigma \in G$, the Frobenius element of the extension satisfying $\sigma(\zeta_n) = \zeta_n^p$ that generates G . Further, the order of σ is the order of p considered as an element of \mathbb{Z}_n^* .*

(b) *If $n = p^m$, $m \geq 1$, then G is of order $p^{m-1}(p-1)$, and we have a group isomorphism $G \cong \mathbb{Z}_{p^m}^*$. Hence G is cyclic if p is odd or if $p = m = 2$, and is isomorphic to the direct product \mathbb{Z}_2 (generated by the class of -1) and $\mathbb{Z}_{p^{m-2}}$ (generated by the class of 5) if $p = 2$ and $m \geq 3$.*

(c) *Suppose that $n = p^m n_1$, where $n_1 \geq 2$ and p does not divide n_1 . Let ζ_1 be a primitive n_1^{th} root of unity, and let ρ be a primitive $p^{m^{\text{th}}}$ root of unity. Then $G \cong \text{Gal}(\mathbb{Q}_p(\zeta_1)/\mathbb{Q}_p) \times \text{Gal}(\mathbb{Q}_p(\rho)/\mathbb{Q}_p)$.*

Theorem 24 ([19]). *Let k denote the order of p considered as an element of \mathbb{Z}_n^* . Then the group $\text{Gal}(\mathbb{F}_p(\zeta_n)/\mathbb{F}_p)$ is isomorphic to \mathbb{Z}_k .*

We suppose in what follows that G is dicyclic of order $4m$. We first apply the above results in order to determine the rank of $K_{-1}(\mathbb{Z}[G])$ where m is an odd prime. We then go on to study the case where m is a power of 2.

Theorem 25. *Let m be an odd prime, and let λ be the number of \mathbb{Q}_2 -conjugacy classes (or equivalently \mathbb{F}_2 -conjugacy classes) of the elements of Dic_{4m} of order m . Then*

$$K_{-1}(\mathbb{Z}[\text{Dic}_{4m}]) \cong \begin{cases} \mathbb{Z}^\lambda \oplus \mathbb{Z}_2 & \text{if } m \equiv 1 \pmod{4} \\ \mathbb{Z}^\lambda & \text{if } m \equiv 3 \pmod{4}. \end{cases}$$

Proof. Let $G = \text{Dic}_{4m}$ be given by the presentation (2.1). By Proposition 16 and equation (2.9), it suffices to show that the rank of $K_{-1}(\mathbb{Z}[\text{Dic}_{4m}])$ is equal to λ . The group G has one element each (e and x^m respectively) of order 1 and 2, $(m-1)$ elements of order $2m$, of the form x^i , i odd, $1 \leq i \leq 2m-1$, and $i \neq m$, $(m-1)$ elements of order m , of the form x^i , i even, $2 \leq i \leq 2m-2$, and $2m$ elements of order 4, of the form $y, xy, \dots, x^{2m-1}y$. The elements of order 1 and 2 each form a single (usual) conjugacy class, those of order 4 form 2 conjugacy classes, $\{x^i y \mid 0 \leq i \leq 2m-2, i \text{ even}\}$ and $\{x^i y \mid 1 \leq i \leq 2m-1, i \text{ odd}\}$, while those of order m and $2m$ form $(m-1)$ conjugacy classes of the form $\{x^i, x^{-i}\}$ for $i = 1, \dots, m-1$. Since $r_{\mathbb{Q}}$ is equal to the number of simple components in the Wedderburn decomposition of $\mathbb{Q}[\text{Dic}_{4m}]$, it follows from equation (2.13) that $r_{\mathbb{Q}} = 5$. This may also be obtained by observing that the subgroups of Dic_{4m} of order 4 are its Sylow 2-subgroups, and so Dic_{4m} possesses a single conjugacy class of subgroups of order 4.

We must thus calculate $r_{\mathbb{Q}_p}$ and $r_{\mathbb{F}_p}$ for $p \in \{2, m\}$, which we do using Theorem 22. Since there is a unique conjugacy class of elements of order 1 and 2, these elements contribute 1 to each of $r_{\mathbb{Q}_p}$ and $r_{\mathbb{F}_p}$, except in the case of $r_{\mathbb{F}_2}$, where the element of order 2 is not 2-regular, so contributes zero. We thus focus on the elements of order 4, m and $2m$. According to [70, page 26], it suffices to analyse the F -conjugacy classes of the elements of order 4, m and $2m$ adjoining an n^{th} root of unity to F for $n = 4, m, 2m$, where $F = \mathbb{Q}_2$ or \mathbb{Q}_m .

- \mathbb{Q}_2 -conjugacy classes of the order 4 elements: by Theorem 23(b), the monomorphism $\phi: \text{Gal}(\mathbb{Q}_2(\zeta_4)/\mathbb{Q}_2) \rightarrow \mathbb{Z}_4^*$ is an isomorphism and $\text{Im}(\phi) = \{1, 3\}$. By equation (2.24), $[y]_{\mathbb{Q}_2} = [y] \cup [y^3] = [y] \cup [x^m y]$ as $y^3 = y^2 \cdot y = x^m y$, and so there is a single \mathbb{Q}_2 -class of order 4 elements because m is odd.
- \mathbb{Q}_2 -conjugacy classes of the elements of order m and $2m$: by hypothesis, the number of \mathbb{Q}_2 -conjugacy classes of the elements of order m is equal to λ . Theorem 23(c) implies that the number of \mathbb{Q}_2 -conjugacy classes of the elements of order $2m$ is also equal to λ .

We conclude that $r_{\mathbb{Q}_2} = 2\lambda + 3$.

- \mathbb{Q}_m -conjugacy classes of the order 4 elements: by Theorem 23(a), we have a monomorphism $\phi: \text{Gal}(\mathbb{Q}_m(\zeta_4)/\mathbb{Q}_m) \rightarrow \mathbb{Z}_4^*$, $\text{Gal}(\mathbb{Q}_m(\zeta_4)/\mathbb{Q}_m)$ is cyclic, and its order is equal to that of m considered as an element of \mathbb{Z}_4^* . If $m \equiv 3 \pmod{4}$ then ϕ is an isomorphism and $\text{Im}(\phi) = \{1, 3\}$. By equation (2.24), $[y]_{\mathbb{Q}_m} = [y] \cup [y^3] = [y] \cup [x^m y]$ as $y^3 = y^2 \cdot y = x^m y$, and so there is a single \mathbb{Q}_m -class of order 4 elements since m is odd. If $m \equiv 1 \pmod{4}$ then $\text{Gal}(\mathbb{Q}_m(\zeta_4)/\mathbb{Q}_m)$ is trivial and $\text{Im}(\phi) = \{1\}$. In this case, the \mathbb{Q}_m -conjugacy classes coincide with the usual conjugacy classes, so there are two \mathbb{Q}_m -conjugacy classes of elements of order 4.
- \mathbb{Q}_m -conjugacy classes of the elements of order m : by Theorem 23(b), the monomorphism $\phi: \text{Gal}(\mathbb{Q}_m(\zeta_m)/\mathbb{Q}_m) \rightarrow \mathbb{Z}_m^*$ is an isomorphism and $\text{Im}(\phi) = \{1, \dots, m-1\}$. By equation (2.24), $[x^2]_{\mathbb{Q}_m} = \bigcup_{i=1}^{m-1} [x^{2i}]$, so there is a single \mathbb{Q}_m -class of order m elements.

- \mathbb{Q}_m -conjugacy classes of the elements of order $2m$: as m is an odd prime, we have that $\mathbb{Q}_m(\zeta_{2m}) = \mathbb{Q}_m(\zeta_m)$, so $\phi: \text{Gal}(\mathbb{Q}_m(\zeta_m)/\mathbb{Q}_m) \longrightarrow \mathbb{Z}_m^* \cong \mathbb{Z}_{m-1}$ is an isomorphism, and we conclude that there is a single \mathbb{Q}_m -class of order $2m$ elements.

It thus follows that $r_{\mathbb{Q}_m} = 6$ if $m \equiv 1 \pmod{4}$, and $r_{\mathbb{Q}_m} = 5$ if $m \equiv 3 \pmod{4}$.

- 2-regular \mathbb{F}_2 -conjugacy classes: we have $G'_2 = \{e, x^2, x^4, \dots, x^{2m-2}\}$, which splits as the disjoint union of $(m+1)/2$ (usual) conjugacy classes in Dic_{4m} , comprised of $\{e\}$, and $\{x^{2i}, x^{2(m-i)}\}$ for $i = 1, \dots, (m-1)/2$. We thus need to study the \mathbb{F}_2 -conjugacy classes of the elements of order m . By Theorem 24, we have $\phi: \text{Gal}(\mathbb{F}_2(\zeta_m)/\mathbb{F}_2) \longrightarrow \mathbb{Z}_m^*$, where $\text{Gal}(\mathbb{F}_2(\zeta_m)/\mathbb{F}_2)$ is cyclic, of order that of 2 considered as an element of \mathbb{Z}_m^* , and $\text{Im}(\phi) = \langle 2 \rangle$.

We return for a moment to the \mathbb{Q}_2 -conjugacy classes of the elements of order m . Replacing ϕ by ϕ_1 to distinguish it from the monomorphism ϕ of the previous paragraph, by Theorem 23(a), we have $\phi_1: \text{Gal}(\mathbb{Q}_2(\zeta_m)/\mathbb{Q}_2) \longrightarrow \mathbb{Z}_m^*$, and $\text{Gal}(\mathbb{Q}_2(\zeta_m)/\mathbb{Q}_2)$ is cyclic, of order that of 2 considered as an element of \mathbb{Z}_m^* . Thus $\text{Im}(\phi_1) = \langle 2 \rangle$ also. In particular, the \mathbb{F}_2 -conjugacy class of an element of Dic_{4m} of order m is equal to its \mathbb{Q}_2 -conjugacy class, and thus the number of \mathbb{F}_2 -conjugacy classes of elements of order m is equal to λ . We deduce that $r_{\mathbb{F}_2} = \lambda + 1$.

- m -regular \mathbb{F}_m -conjugacy classes: we have

$$G'_m = \{e, x^m, y, xy, x^2y, \dots, x^{2m-2}y, x^{2m-1}y\}.$$

The four (usual) conjugacy classes in Dic_{4m} are:

$$\{e\}, \{x^m\}, \{y, x^2y, \dots, x^{2m-2}y\} \text{ and } \{xy, x^3y, \dots, x^{2m-1}y\}.$$

It is thus necessary to study the \mathbb{F}_m -conjugacy classes of the latter two classes, which are those of the elements of Dic_{4m} of order 4. By Theorem 24, we have the monomorphism $\phi: \text{Gal}(\mathbb{F}_m(\zeta_4)/\mathbb{F}_m) \longrightarrow \mathbb{Z}_4^*$, and $\text{Gal}(\mathbb{F}_m(\zeta_4)/\mathbb{F}_m)$ is cyclic, of order that of m considered as an element of \mathbb{Z}_4^* . As in the case of the \mathbb{Q}_m -conjugacy classes of the order 4 elements, if $m \equiv 3 \pmod{4}$, there is a single \mathbb{F}_m -class of order 4 elements, while if $m \equiv 1 \pmod{4}$, the \mathbb{F}_m -conjugacy classes coincide with the usual conjugacy classes, and so there are two \mathbb{F}_m -conjugacy classes of order 4 elements. Hence $r_{\mathbb{F}_m} = 4$ if $m \equiv 1 \pmod{4}$ and $r_{\mathbb{F}_m} = 3$ if $m \equiv 3 \pmod{4}$.

So by equation (2.10), the rank r of $K_{-1}(\mathbb{Z}[\text{Dic}_{4m}])$ is given by:

$$\begin{aligned} r &= 1 - r_{\mathbb{Q}} + (r_{\mathbb{Q}_2} - r_{\mathbb{F}_2}) + (r_{\mathbb{Q}_m} - r_{\mathbb{F}_m}) \\ &= \begin{cases} 1 - 5 + (2\lambda + 3) - (\lambda + 1) + (6 - 4) & \text{if } m \equiv 1 \pmod{4} \\ 1 - 5 + (2\lambda + 3) - (\lambda + 1) + (5 - 3) & \text{if } m \equiv 3 \pmod{4} \end{cases} \\ &= \lambda. \end{aligned}$$

□

If m is an odd prime, the proof of Theorem 25 indicates that the number λ of \mathbb{Q}_2 -conjugacy classes of the elements of Dic_{4m} of order m is related to the order of the subgroup $\langle 2 \rangle$ in \mathbb{Z}_m^* . The question of when 2 generates \mathbb{Z}_m^* is open and constitutes a special case of Artin's primitive root conjecture. The following proposition shows that it is also interesting for us to know whether -1 belongs to $\langle 2 \rangle$, and enables us to determine the rank of $K_{-1}(\mathbb{Z}[\text{Dic}_{4m}])$ solely in terms of $|\langle 2 \rangle|$.

Proposition 26. *Let m and λ be defined as in the statement of Theorem 25. Then*

$$\lambda = \begin{cases} (m-1)/|\langle 2 \rangle| & \text{if } -1 \in \langle 2 \rangle \\ (m-1)/2|\langle 2 \rangle| & \text{if } -1 \notin \langle 2 \rangle. \end{cases}$$

Examples.

(a) Suppose that m is a Fermat number, of the form $2^{2^s} + 1$, where $s \in \mathbb{N}$. Then $|\langle 2 \rangle| = 2^{s+1}$ and $-1 \in \langle 2 \rangle$, so the rank of $K_{-1}(\mathbb{Z}[\text{Dic}_{4m}])$ is equal to $\lambda = 2^{2^s - s - 1}$. For example, if $m = 257$ then $\lambda = 16$ and $K_{-1}(\mathbb{Z}[\text{Dic}_{1028}]) \cong \mathbb{Z}_2 \oplus \mathbb{Z}^{16}$.

(b) Suppose that m is a Mersenne prime, of the form $2^p - 1$, where p is prime. Then $|\langle 2 \rangle| = p$ and $-1 \notin \langle 2 \rangle$, so the rank of $K_{-1}(\mathbb{Z}[\text{Dic}_{4m}])$ is equal to $\lambda = \frac{2^p - 2}{2^p} = \frac{2^{p-1} - 1}{p}$. For example, if $m = 127$ then $\lambda = 9$ and $K_{-1}(\mathbb{Z}[\text{Dic}_{508}]) \cong \mathbb{Z}^9$, and if $m = 8191$ then $\lambda = 315$ and $K_{-1}(\mathbb{Z}[\text{Dic}_{32728}]) \cong \mathbb{Z}^{315}$.

Proof of Proposition 26. Using equation (2.1), the elements of Dic_{4m} of order m are of the form x^{2i} , $1 \leq i \leq m-1$, and $[x^{2i}] = \{x^{2i}, x^{-2i}\}$, in particular, they form $(m-1)/2$ distinct (usual) conjugacy classes in Dic_{4m} . Let $1 \leq i \leq m-1$. Since m is prime, there exist $\tau, \mu \in \mathbb{Z}$ such that $\tau i + \mu m = 1$. One may check easily that the maps $[x^2]_{\mathbb{Q}_2} \rightarrow [x^{2i}]_{\mathbb{Q}_2}$ and $[x^{2i}]_{\mathbb{Q}_2} \rightarrow [x^2]_{\mathbb{Q}_2}$, defined respectively by $w \mapsto w^i$ and $z \mapsto z^\tau$, are mutual inverses, and hence $[x^{2i}]_{\mathbb{Q}_2}$ has the same number of elements as $[x^2]_{\mathbb{Q}_2}$. Thus the number of \mathbb{Q}_2 -conjugacy classes of the elements of order m , which is equal to λ , is just $(m-1)$ divided by the cardinal of $[x^2]_{\mathbb{Q}_2}$. Theorem 23(a) and equation (2.24) imply that:

$$\begin{aligned} [x^2]_{\mathbb{Q}_2} &= \bigcup_{t \in \langle 2 \rangle} [x^{2t}] = \{x^{2i} \mid i \in \langle 2 \rangle\} \cup \{x^{-2i} \mid i \in \langle 2 \rangle\} \\ &= \{x^{2i} \mid i \in \langle 2 \rangle\} \cup \{x^{2i} \mid i \in -\langle 2 \rangle\}. \end{aligned}$$

Now $-\langle 2 \rangle$ is the $\langle 2 \rangle$ -coset of -1 in \mathbb{Z}_m^* , so $\{x^{2i} \mid i \in \langle 2 \rangle\}$ and $\{x^{2i} \mid i \in -\langle 2 \rangle\}$ have the same cardinality $|\langle 2 \rangle|$, and are either equal or disjoint. Since $-1 \in -\langle 2 \rangle$, they are equal if and only if $-1 \in \langle 2 \rangle$. This being the case, the cardinality of $[x^2]_{\mathbb{Q}_2}$ is equal to $|\langle 2 \rangle|$, and $\lambda = (m-1)/|\langle 2 \rangle|$. If $-1 \notin \langle 2 \rangle$, the two cosets $\langle 2 \rangle$ and $-\langle 2 \rangle$ are disjoint, thus the cardinality of $[x^2]_{\mathbb{Q}_2}$ is equal to $2|\langle 2 \rangle|$, and $\lambda = (m-1)/2|\langle 2 \rangle|$ as required. \square

The methods used above allow us in theory to calculate $K_{-1}(\mathbb{Z}[\text{Dic}_{4m}])$ for any $m \geq 2$, not just for m an odd prime. As another example, consider the case where m is a power of 2, so $G \cong \mathcal{Q}_{2^k}$ is the generalised quaternion group of order 2^k , where $m = 2^{k-2}$.

Proposition 27. *$K_{-1}(\mathbb{Z}[\mathcal{Q}_{2^k}])$ is trivial if $k = 3$, and is isomorphic to \mathbb{Z}_2 if $k \geq 4$.*

Proof. By Theorem 15 and Proposition 17, it suffices to show that for all $k \geq 3$, the rank of $K_{-1}(\mathbb{Z}[\mathcal{Q}_{2^k}])$ is zero, which we do using Theorem 22. We must calculate $r_{\mathbb{Q}}$, $r_{\mathbb{Q}_2}$ and $r_{\mathbb{F}_2}$. Using the presentation (2.1) of \mathcal{Q}_{2^k} , we see that $\mathcal{Q}_{2^k} = \langle x \rangle \amalg \langle x \rangle y$, and that the elements of $\langle x \rangle y$ are all of order 4. So G'_2 consists of the identity element, whence $r_{\mathbb{F}_2} = 1$.

We now determine the number $r_{\mathbb{Q}}$ of \mathbb{Q} -conjugacy classes, which by Remark 21(b), is equal to the number of conjugacy classes of cyclic subgroups in \mathcal{Q}_{2^k} . The elements of \mathcal{Q}_{2^k} are of order 2^l , $0 \leq l \leq k-1$, and if $l \neq 2$ then the elements of order 2^l are contained

entirely within $\langle x \rangle$. Thus there is just one subgroup of order 2^l for each such l , and so these subgroups contribute $k - 1$ to $r_{\mathbb{Q}}$. Suppose then that $l = 2$. Using the relations

$$y(x^i y)y^{-1} = x^{-i}y, x(x^i y)x^{-1} = x^{i+2}y \text{ and } (x^i y)^{-1} = x^{i+2^{k-2}}y \quad (2.25)$$

in \mathcal{Q}_{2^k} , we see that there are at most three conjugacy classes of cyclic subgroups of order 4, represented by the subgroups $\langle x^{2^{k-3}} \rangle$, $\langle y \rangle$ and $\langle xy \rangle$. Since $\langle x^{2^{k-3}} \rangle$ is contained in the normal subgroup $\langle x \rangle$ of \mathcal{Q}_{2^k} , it cannot be conjugate to the two other subgroups, and using relations (2.25), we see that $\langle y \rangle$ and $\langle xy \rangle$ are non conjugate. We thus conclude that $r_{\mathbb{Q}} = k + 2$. This number may also be obtained by counting the number of simple components in the Wedderburn decomposition (2.11) of $\mathbb{Q}[\mathcal{Q}_{2^k}]$.

Finally we calculate $r_{\mathbb{Q}_2}$. Consider the elements of \mathcal{Q}_{2^k} of order 2^l , where $0 \leq l \leq k - 1$. If $l \in \{0, 1\}$ then there is just one element of order 2^l , and so the contribution to $r_{\mathbb{Q}_2}$ is one in each case. If $l = 2$ then $\text{Gal}(\mathbb{Q}_2(\zeta_{2^2})/\mathbb{Q}_2) \cong \mathbb{Z}_{2^2}^* = \{1, 3\}$ by Theorem 23(b). Hence for every element z of \mathcal{Q}_{2^k} of order 4, $[z]_{\mathbb{Q}_2} = [z] \cup [z^3] = [z] \cup [z^{-1}] = [z]$ since in \mathcal{Q}_{2^k} , every element is conjugate to its inverse. Thus the elements of \mathcal{Q}_{2^k} of order 4 contribute 3 to $r_{\mathbb{Q}_2}$. Suppose then that $l \geq 3$. The elements of order 2^l are contained in $\langle x \rangle$, are elements of the subgroup $\langle x^{2^{k-l-1}} \rangle$ of the form $x^{2^{k-l-1}r}$, where $\text{gcd}(r, 2^l) = 1$, and so are of the form $x^{2^{k-l-1}r}$, where $r \in \{1, 3, \dots, 2^l - 1\}$. On the other hand, applying Theorem 23(b), we see that $\text{Gal}(\mathbb{Q}_2(\zeta_{2^l})/\mathbb{Q}_2) \cong \mathbb{Z}_{2^l}^*$. Now $\mathbb{Z}_{2^l}^* = \{1, 3, \dots, 2^l - 1\}$, and thus

$$[x^{2^{k-l-1}}]_{\mathbb{Q}_2} = [x^{2^{k-l-1}}] \cup [x^{3(2^{k-l-1})}] \cup \dots \cup [x^{(2^l-1)(2^{k-l-1})}].$$

From above, this is precisely the set of all elements of order 2^l , and hence for each $3 \leq l \leq k - 1$, the elements of order 2^l contribute one to $r_{\mathbb{Q}_2}$. Summing over all possible values of l yields $r_{\mathbb{Q}_2} = k + 2$, and applying equation (2.10), we obtain $r = 1 - r_{\mathbb{Q}} + r_{\mathbb{Q}_2} - r_{\mathbb{F}_2} = 0$, which proves the proposition. \square

We now turn to the calculation of $K_{-1}(\mathbb{Z}[G])$, where G is a binary polyhedral group.

Proposition 28. $K_{-1}(\mathbb{Z}[T^*]) \cong \mathbb{Z}$, $K_{-1}(\mathbb{Z}[O^*]) \cong \mathbb{Z}_2 \oplus \mathbb{Z}$ and $K_{-1}(\mathbb{Z}[I^*]) \cong \mathbb{Z}_2 \oplus \mathbb{Z}^2$.

Proof. Let G be a binary polyhedral group. By Proposition 18, it suffices to calculate the rank of $K_{-1}(\mathbb{Z}[G])$, which we do using (2.10) and Theorem 22. From Remark 21(b) and the notation of Section 2.2, $r_{\mathbb{Q}} = \sum_{d|G} r_2(d)$, and it follows from Proposition 7 that $r_{\mathbb{Q}} = 5$ if

$G = T^*$, and $r_{\mathbb{Q}} = 7$ if $G = O^*$ or I^* . These values of $r_{\mathbb{Q}}$ may also be obtained from the corresponding Wedderburn decompositions given in (2.18)–(2.20).

(a) We first calculate the rank of $K_{-1}(\mathbb{Z}[T^*])$, where a presentation of $T^* = \langle P, Q, X \rangle$ is given by the first line of equation (2.2).

- The set G'_3 consists of the union of the elements of T^* of order 1, 2 and 4. By Proposition 7(a), if $m \in \{1, 2, 4\}$, the elements of order m form a single conjugacy class, and thus form a single \mathbb{Q}_p -conjugacy class for $p \in \{2, 3\}$, whence $r_{\mathbb{F}_3} = 3$.

- The set G'_2 consists of the identity and the 8 elements of T^* of order 3, and by Proposition 7(a), there are two conjugacy classes of the elements of order 3, of which X and X^{-1} are representatives. By Theorem 24, we have an isomorphism $\phi: \text{Gal}(\mathbb{F}_2(\zeta_3)/\mathbb{F}_2) \longrightarrow \mathbb{Z}_3^*$, and $\text{Im}(\phi) = \{1, 2\}$. Thus $[X]_{\mathbb{F}_2} = [X] \cup [X^2] = [X] \cup [X^{-1}]$. It follows that there is a single \mathbb{F}_2 -conjugacy class of elements of order 3, and so $r_{\mathbb{F}_2} = 2$.
- Since there is a single conjugacy class of elements of order d , where $d \in \{1, 2, 4\}$, it remains to determine the number of \mathbb{Q}_p -conjugacy classes, $p \in \{2, 3\}$, of the elements of T^* of order 3 and 6. We first calculate the number of \mathbb{Q}_p -conjugacy classes of the elements of order 3. By Theorem 23(a) and (b), $\phi: \text{Gal}(\mathbb{Q}_p(\zeta_3)/\mathbb{Q}_p) \longrightarrow \mathbb{Z}_3^*$ is an isomorphism, $\text{Im}(\phi) = \{1, 2\}$, and $[X]_{\mathbb{Q}_p} = [X] \cup [X^2] = [X] \cup [X^{-1}]$, which is the union of the two (usual) conjugacy classes of elements of order 3. We have the same result for the elements of order 6 of T^* , since they are obtained from those of order 3 by adjoining the central element of T^* of order 2. So for all $d \in \{1, 2, 3, 4, 6\}$ and $p \in \{2, 3\}$, there is a single \mathbb{Q}_p -conjugacy class of the elements of order d , and hence $r_{\mathbb{Q}_2} = r_{\mathbb{Q}_3} = 5$.
- By equation (2.10), the rank r of $K_{-1}(\mathbb{Z}[T^*])$ is equal to $r = 1 - r_{\mathbb{Q}} + r_{\mathbb{Q}_2} - r_{\mathbb{F}_2} + r_{\mathbb{Q}_3} - r_{\mathbb{F}_3} = 1$, and thus $K_{-1}(\mathbb{Z}[T^*]) \cong \mathbb{Z}$.

(b) We now calculate the rank of $\mathbb{K}_{-1}(\mathbb{Z}[O^*])$.

- Recall first that T^* is a subgroup of O^* of index 2, and that $O^* \setminus T^*$ consists of twelve elements of order 4 and of order 8. So G'_3 is contained in T^* , and as in case (a) we obtain $r_{\mathbb{F}_2} = 2$. Further, the elements of O^* of order 1, 2, 3 and 6 each give rise to a single \mathbb{Q}_p -conjugacy class of O^* for $p \in \{2, 3\}$. It remains to calculate the number of \mathbb{Q}_p -conjugacy classes of the elements of order 4 and 8, as well as $r_{\mathbb{F}_3}$.
- To calculate the number of \mathbb{Q}_p -conjugacy classes of the elements of order 8, recall from Proposition 7(b) that there are two conjugacy classes of elements of order 8, for which representatives are g and g^3 , where g is any element of O^* of order 8. By Theorem 23(a) and (b), $\phi: \text{Gal}(\mathbb{Q}_p(\zeta_8)/\mathbb{Q}_p) \longrightarrow \mathbb{Z}_8^*$ satisfies $\text{Im}(\phi) \supset \{1, 3\}$, hence $[g]_{\mathbb{Q}_p} \supset [g] \cup [g^3]$, and there is a single \mathbb{Q}_p -conjugacy class of elements of order 8.
- To calculate the number of \mathbb{Q}_p -conjugacy classes of the elements of order 4, recall from Proposition 7(b) that there are two conjugacy classes of elements of order 4, C_1 and C_2 , where C_1 (resp. C_2) is the intersection of the set of elements of O^* of order 4 with T^* (resp. with $O^* \setminus T^*$). In particular, if $g \in C_1 \cup C_2$ then g and g^{-1} are conjugate. By Theorem 23(a) and (b), $\phi: \text{Gal}(\mathbb{Q}_p(\zeta_4)/\mathbb{Q}_p) \longrightarrow \mathbb{Z}_4^*$ is an isomorphism, $\text{Im}(\phi) = \{1, 3\}$, and $[g]_{\mathbb{Q}_p} = [g] \cup [g^{-1}] = [g]$ for all $g \in O^*$ of order 4. So the number of \mathbb{Q}_p -conjugacy classes of elements of order 4 is equal to 2.
- From the above computations, if $d \in \{1, 2, 3, 6, 8\}$ and $p \in \{2, 3\}$, there is a single \mathbb{Q}_p -conjugacy class of elements of order d , and there are two \mathbb{Q}_p -conjugacy class of elements of order 4, whence $r_{\mathbb{Q}_p} = 7$.
- To calculate $r_{\mathbb{F}_3}$, first note that G'_3 consists of the union of the elements of O^* of order 1, 2, 4 and 8, and that there is a single conjugacy class of elements of order 1 and 2. Let $m \in \{4, 8\}$. By Theorem 24, $\phi: \text{Gal}(\mathbb{F}_3(\zeta_m)/\mathbb{F}_3) \longrightarrow \mathbb{Z}_m^*$ satisfies $\text{Im}(\phi) = \{1, 3\}$, and we see that the number of \mathbb{F}_3 -conjugacy classes of elements of order m is just the number of \mathbb{Q}_p -conjugacy classes of these elements, *i.e.* there are two \mathbb{F}_3 -conjugacy classes of elements of order 4, and one \mathbb{F}_3 -conjugacy class of elements of order 8. We conclude that $r_{\mathbb{F}_3} = 5$.
- By equation (2.10), the rank r of $K_{-1}(\mathbb{Z}[O^*])$ is equal to $r = 1 - r_{\mathbb{Q}} + r_{\mathbb{Q}_2} - r_{\mathbb{F}_2} + r_{\mathbb{Q}_3} - r_{\mathbb{F}_3} =$

1, and thus $K_{-1}(\mathbb{Z}[\mathcal{O}^*]) \cong \mathbb{Z}_2 \oplus \mathbb{Z}$.

(c) Finally, we determine the rank of $\mathbb{K}_{-1}(\mathbb{Z}[\mathcal{I}^*])$.

- By Proposition 7(c), $r_2(l) = 1$ for all $l \in \{1, 2, 3, 4, 6\}$, so there is a single conjugacy class of elements of order l , and there are two conjugacy classes of elements of order 5 and 10. Hence it suffices to study the various F -conjugacy classes for the elements of order 5 and 10.
- We compute the number of the elements \mathbb{Q}_p -conjugacy classes of elements of order 5 for $p \in \{2, 3, 5\}$. By Proposition 7(c), if $g \in \mathcal{I}^*$ is of order 5, g and g^2 are representatives of the two conjugacy classes of elements of order 5. Using Theorem 23(a) and (b), the homomorphism $\phi: \text{Gal}(\mathbb{Q}_p(\zeta_5)/\mathbb{Q}_p) \rightarrow \mathbb{Z}_5^*$ is an isomorphism, and so there is a single \mathbb{Q}_p -conjugacy class of elements of order 5 in \mathcal{I}^* for all $p \in \{2, 3, 5\}$. By adjoining the central element of \mathcal{I}^* of order 2 to g , it follows that the same is true for the elements of order 10, from which it follows that $r_{\mathbb{Q}_p} = 7$ for all $p \in \{2, 3, 5\}$.
- To compute the number of \mathbb{F}_2 - and \mathbb{F}_3 -conjugacy classes of \mathcal{I}^* , note that G'_2 is the union of the elements of \mathcal{I}^* of order 1, 3 and 5, and G'_3 is the union of the elements of \mathcal{I}^* of order 1, 2, 4, 5 and 10. By Proposition 7(c), there is a single conjugacy class in \mathcal{I}^* of elements of order 1, 2, 3 and 4. By Theorem 24, for $p \in \{2, 3\}$, the homomorphism $\text{Gal}(\mathbb{F}_p(\zeta_5)/\mathbb{F}_p) \rightarrow \mathbb{Z}_5^*$ is an isomorphism, and $\text{Im}(\phi) = \{1, 2, 3, 4\}$. Thus there is a single \mathbb{F}_p -conjugacy class of the 5-regular elements of order 5. By adjoining the central element of \mathcal{I}^* of order 2 to g , it follows that the same is true for the elements of order 10 in the case $p = 3$. We conclude that $r_{\mathbb{F}_2} = 3$ and $r_{\mathbb{F}_3} = 5$.
- To compute the number of \mathbb{F}_5 -conjugacy classes of \mathcal{I}^* , the set G'_5 is the union of the elements of \mathcal{I}^* of order 1, 2, 3, 4 and 6. Since there is a single conjugacy class in \mathcal{I}^* of elements of each of these orders, it follows that $r_{\mathbb{F}_5} = 5$.
- By equation (2.10), the rank r of $K_{-1}(\mathbb{Z}[\mathcal{I}^*])$ is equal to $r = 1 - r_{\mathbb{Q}} + r_{\mathbb{Q}_2} - r_{\mathbb{F}_2} + r_{\mathbb{Q}_3} - r_{\mathbb{F}_3} + r_{\mathbb{Q}_5} - r_{\mathbb{F}_5} = 2$, and thus $K_{-1}(\mathbb{Z}[\mathcal{I}^*]) \cong \mathbb{Z}_2 \oplus \mathbb{Z}^2$. \square

As we mentioned in Section 2.5.2, in order to prove Theorem 31 and to obtain Table 2.1, we need to compute $K_{-1}(\mathbb{Z}[\text{Dic}_{4\mu}])$ for $\mu \in \{6, 9, 10\}$. The torsion of these groups was already determined in Proposition 20. To end this section, we calculate their rank.

Proposition 29. *If $\mu \in \{6, 9, 10\}$, the rank of $K_{-1}(\mathbb{Z}[\text{Dic}_{4\mu}])$ is equal to 2.*

Proof.

(a) We first consider the cases where $\mu \in \{6, 10\}$, so $\mu/2$ is an odd prime. Making use of the presentation of the form (2.1) of $\text{Dic}_{4\mu}$, the following table summarises the elements of each order of $\text{Dic}_{4\mu}$.

order d	elements of order d	number of elements
1	e	1
2	x^μ	1
4	$x^{\mu/2}, x^{3\mu/2}, x^i y, i \in \{0, 1, \dots, 2\mu - 1\}$	$2\mu + 2$
$\mu/2$	$x^4, x^8, \dots, x^{2(\mu-2)}$	$(\mu - 2)/2$
μ	$x^2, x^6, \dots, x^{\mu-4}, x^{\mu+4}, x^{\mu+8}, \dots, x^{2(\mu-2)}$	$(\mu - 2)/2$
2μ	$x^i, i \in \{1, 3, \dots, 2\mu - 1\} \setminus \{\mu/2, 3\mu/2\}$	$\mu - 2$

We compute the number of F -conjugacy classes for each of the fields F that appear in (2.10).

- From the above table, $\text{Dic}_{4\mu}$ possesses a single cyclic subgroup of order r for all $r \in \{1, 2, \mu/2, \mu, 2\mu\}$, and using (2.1), it has three conjugacy classes of elements of order 4, namely $\{x^{\mu/2}, x^{3\mu/2}\}$, $\{x^i y \mid i \in \{1, 3, \dots, 2\mu - 1\}\}$ and $\{x^i y \mid i \in \{0, 2, \dots, 2\mu - 2\}\}$. So $\text{Dic}_{4\mu}$ has three conjugacy classes of (cyclic) subgroups of order 4. We conclude that $\text{Dic}_{4\mu}$ has eight conjugacy classes of cyclic subgroups, hence $r_{\mathbb{Q}} = 8$.
- The set of 2-regular elements of $\text{Dic}_{4\mu}$ consists of e and the $(\mu - 2)/2$ elements of order $\mu/2$. Since the order of $\bar{2}$ in $\mathbb{Z}_{\mu/2}^*$ is equal to $(\mu - 2)/2$, which is the order of $\mathbb{Z}_{\mu/2}^*$, the injective homomorphism $\phi: \text{Gal}(\mathbb{F}_2(\zeta_{\mu/2})/\mathbb{F}_2) \rightarrow \mathbb{Z}_{\mu/2}^*$ is an isomorphism. Using (2.24), it follows that the \mathbb{F}_2 -conjugacy class of x^4 is equal to $\{x^4, x^8, \dots, x^{2(m-2)}\}$, and thus $r_{\mathbb{F}_2} = 2$.
- The set of $\mu/2$ -regular elements of $\text{Dic}_{4\mu}$ consists of e, x^μ , which is of order 2, and the $2\mu + 2$ elements of order 4. The image of the injective homomorphism $\phi: \text{Gal}(\mathbb{F}_{\mu/2}(\zeta_4)/\mathbb{F}_{\mu/2}) \rightarrow \mathbb{Z}_4^*$ is contained in $\{1, 3\}$, and so is equal to $\{1\}$ or $\{1, 3\}$. But $(x^{\mu/2})^3 = x^{3\mu/2}$, and for all $i \in \{0, 1, \dots, 2\mu - 1\}$, $(x^i y)^3 = (x^i y)^{-1} = y^{-1} x^{-i} = y^{-1} x^{-i} y \cdot y^2 \cdot y = x^{i+\mu} y$. It follows that if $z \in \text{Dic}_{4\mu}$ is of order 4, $[z] = [z^3]$, and by (2.24), we have $[z] \subset [z]_{\mathbb{F}_{\mu/2}} \subset [z] \subset [z^3] = [z]$, so $[z]_{\mathbb{F}_{\mu/2}} = [z]$. Thus the \mathbb{F}_2 -conjugacy classes of the $\mu/2$ -regular elements of $\text{Dic}_{4\mu}$ of order 4 coincide with the usual conjugacy classes, whence $r_{\mathbb{F}_{\mu/2}} = 5$.

We now compute $r_{\mathbb{Q}_2}$. To do so, we need to determine the number of \mathbb{Q}_2 -conjugacy classes of the elements of order 4, $\mu/2, \mu$ and 2μ .

- We calculate the number of \mathbb{Q}_2 -conjugacy classes of the elements of order 4. By Theorem 23(b), the injective homomorphism $\phi: \text{Gal}(\mathbb{Q}_2(\zeta_4)/\mathbb{Q}_2) \rightarrow \mathbb{Z}_4^*$ is an isomorphism, and $\text{Im}(\phi) = \{\bar{1}, \bar{3}\}$. As in the analysis of the $\mu/2$ -regular elements of order 4, it follows that $[z]_{\mathbb{Q}_2} = [z]$ for every element $z \in \text{Dic}_{4\mu}$ of order 4, and so the \mathbb{Q}_2 -conjugacy classes of the elements of order 4 coincide with the usual conjugacy classes, and hence there are three \mathbb{Q}_2 -conjugacy classes of elements of order 4.
- We determine the number of \mathbb{Q}_2 -conjugacy classes of the elements of order $\mu/2, \mu$ and 2μ . Let $j \in \{0, 1, 2\}$. Then the injective homomorphism $\phi: \text{Gal}(\mathbb{Q}_2(\zeta_{2^j \mu/2})/\mathbb{Q}_2) \rightarrow \mathbb{Z}_{2^j \mu/2}^*$ is an isomorphism using Theorem 23(b) and (c) because $\text{Gal}(\mathbb{Q}_2(\zeta_2/\mathbb{Q}_2))$ is trivial and the group $\text{Gal}(\mathbb{Q}_2(\zeta_4/\mathbb{Q}_2))$ is of order 2. Thus there is a single \mathbb{Q}_2 -conjugacy class of elements of order $2^j \mu/2$ for all $j \in \{0, 1, 2\}$.
- It follows from these calculations that there is a single \mathbb{Q}_2 -conjugacy class of elements of order r for all $r \in \{1, 2, \mu/2, \mu, 2\mu\}$, and three \mathbb{Q}_2 -conjugacy classes of elements of order 4, so $r_{\mathbb{Q}_2} = 8$.

We now compute $r_{\mathbb{Q}_{\mu/2}}$. To do so, we need to determine the number of $\mathbb{Q}_{\mu/2}$ -conjugacy classes of the elements of order 4, $\mu/2, \mu$ and 2μ .

- Let us determine the number of $\mathbb{Q}_{\mu/2}$ -conjugacy classes of the elements of order $\mu/2$ and μ . If $j \in \{0, 1\}$, using Theorem 23(b) and (c), we see that the injective homomorphism $\phi: \text{Gal}(\mathbb{Q}_{\mu/2}(\zeta_{2^j \mu/2})/\mathbb{Q}_{\mu/2}) \rightarrow \mathbb{Z}_{2^j \mu/2}^*$ is an isomorphism because $\text{Gal}(\mathbb{Q}_{\mu/2}(\zeta_2/\mathbb{Q}_2))$ is trivial. Thus there is a single $\mathbb{Q}_{\mu/2}$ -conjugacy class of elements of order $2^j \mu/2$ for all $j \in \{0, 1\}$.
- To calculate the number of $\mathbb{Q}_{\mu/2}$ -conjugacy classes of the elements of order 2μ , consider the injective homomorphism $\phi: \text{Gal}(\mathbb{Q}_{\mu/2}(\zeta_{2\mu})/\mathbb{Q}_{\mu/2}) \rightarrow \mathbb{Z}_{2\mu}^*$. By Theorem 23(c), the group

$\text{Gal}(\mathbb{Q}_{\mu/2}(\zeta_{2\mu})/\mathbb{Q}_{\mu/2})$ is isomorphic to the direct product

$$\text{Gal}(\mathbb{Q}_{\mu/2}(\zeta_{\mu/2})/\mathbb{Q}_{\mu/2}) \times \text{Gal}(\mathbb{Q}_{\mu/2}(\zeta_4)/\mathbb{Q}_{\mu/2}),$$

which by Theorem 23(b) is isomorphic to $\mathbb{Z}_{\mu/2}^* \times \mathbb{Z}_2$ (resp. $\mathbb{Z}_{\mu/2}^*$) if $\mu/2 \equiv 3 \pmod{4}$ (resp. if $\mu/2 \equiv 1 \pmod{4}$). We now distinguish the two cases $\mu = 6$ and $\mu = 10$.

– If $\mu = 6$, ϕ is an isomorphism, and there is a single \mathbb{Q}_3 -conjugacy class of elements of order 12.

– If $\mu = 10$, $\text{Gal}(\mathbb{Q}_5(\zeta_{20})/\mathbb{Q}_5)$ is isomorphic to \mathbb{Z}_4 by Theorem 23(b) and (c), so the image of ϕ is a subgroup of \mathbb{Z}_{20}^* . Now \mathbb{Z}_{20}^* is isomorphic to $\mathbb{Z}_2 \times \mathbb{Z}_4$, so it possesses two subgroups isomorphic to \mathbb{Z}_4 . A calculation shows that these two subgroups are of the form $\{\bar{1}, \bar{3}, \bar{7}, \bar{9}\}$ and $\{\bar{1}, \bar{9}, \bar{13}, \bar{17}\}$. Using the table given at the beginning of the proof and (2.24) and the fact that x^k is conjugate to x^{20-k} for all $k \in \{1, 3, 7, 9, 11, 13, 17, 19\}$ by (2.1), it follows in either case that there is a single \mathbb{Q}_5 -conjugacy class of elements of order 20.

• It follows from these calculations that there is a single $\mathbb{Q}_{\mu/2}$ -conjugacy class of elements of order r for all $r \in \{1, 2, \mu/2, \mu, 2\mu\}$, and three $\mathbb{Q}_{\mu/2}$ -conjugacy classes of elements of order 4, so $r_{\mathbb{Q}_{\mu/2}} = 8$ for $\mu \in \{6, 10\}$.

• Using (2.10), we conclude that $r = 1 - r_{\mathbb{Q}} + r_{\mathbb{Q}_2} - r_{\mathbb{F}_2} + r_{\mathbb{Q}_{\mu/2}} - r_{\mathbb{F}_{\mu/2}} = 1 - 8 + (8 - 2) + (8 - 5) = 2$ as required.

(b) Now suppose that $\mu = 9$. Using the presentation of the form (2.1) of $\text{Dic}_{4\mu}$, the following table summarises the elements of each order of $\text{Dic}_{4\mu}$.

order d	elements of order d	number of elements
1	e	1
2	x^9	1
3	x^6, x^{12}	2
4	$x^i y, i \in \{0, 1, \dots, 17\}$	18
6	x^3, x^{15}	2
9	$x^{2i}, i \in \{1, 2, 4, 5, 7, 8\}$	6
18	$x^i, i \in \{1, 5, 7, 11, 13, 17\}$	6

In order to apply (2.10), we compute the number of F -conjugacy classes for each of the fields F that appear in that equation.

• By (2.1), there are two conjugacy classes of the elements of order 4, $\{x^i y \mid i \in \{0, 2, \dots, 16\}\}$ and $\{x^i y \mid i \in \{1, 3, \dots, 17\}\}$, and the remaining conjugacy classes are of the form $\{x^i, x^{18-i}\}$ for $i \in \{0, 1, \dots, 9\}$. Recall that $r_{\mathbb{Q}}$ is given by the number of factors in equation (2.22), so $r_{\mathbb{Q}} = 7$ (this may also be verified that there is a single conjugacy class of cyclic subgroups of order d for each $d \in \{1, 2, 3, 4, 6, 9, 18\}$).

• If $d \in \{1, 2, 3, 6\}$, there is a single conjugacy class of elements of order d . Thus there is a single \mathbb{Q}_p -conjugacy class of elements of order d by (2.24), where $p \in \{2, 3\}$. Similarly, if $d \in \{1, 2\}$ (resp. $d \in \{1, 3\}$), there is a single \mathbb{F}_3 -conjugacy class (resp. \mathbb{F}_2 -conjugacy class) of elements of order d . So it suffices to determine:

(i) the number of \mathbb{F}_2 -conjugacy classes of elements of order 9.

- (ii) the number of \mathbb{F}_3 -conjugacy classes of elements of order 4.
 (iii) the number of \mathbb{Q}_p -conjugacy classes of elements of order d , where $d \in \{4, 9, 18\}$, and $p \in \{2, 3\}$.

We consider these cases in turn.

- By Theorem 24, the injective homomorphism $\phi: \text{Gal}(\mathbb{F}_2(\zeta_9)/\mathbb{F}_2) \longrightarrow \mathbb{Z}_9^*$ is an isomorphism, and so there is a single \mathbb{F}_2 -conjugacy class of elements of order 9. Now the set G_2' of 2-regular elements of Dic_{36} is given by the union of the elements of order 1, 3 and 9, and since there is a single (usual) conjugacy class of elements of order 1 and 3, we conclude that $r_{\mathbb{F}_2} = 3$.
- By Theorem 24, the injective homomorphism $\phi: \text{Gal}(\mathbb{F}_3(\zeta_4)/\mathbb{F}_3) \longrightarrow \mathbb{Z}_4^*$ is an isomorphism, and so there is a single \mathbb{F}_3 -conjugacy class of elements of order 4. Now the set G_3' of 3-regular elements of Dic_{36} is given by the union of the elements of order 1, 2 and 4, and since there is a single (usual) conjugacy class of elements of order 1 and 2, we conclude that $r_{\mathbb{F}_3} = 3$.
- \mathbb{Q}_2 -conjugacy classes of elements of order 4: by Theorem 23(b), the injective homomorphism $\phi: \text{Gal}(\mathbb{Q}_2(\zeta_4)/\mathbb{Q}_2) \longrightarrow \mathbb{Z}_4^*$ is an isomorphism, and $\text{Im}(\phi) = \{\bar{1}, \bar{3}\}$. Thus $[y]_{\mathbb{Q}_2} = [y] \cup [y^3] = [y] \cup [x^9 y]$, where y is the element of Dic_{36} appearing in (2.1), so $[y]_{\mathbb{Q}_2}$ is the union of the two conjugacy classes of elements of order 4. Consequently, there is a single \mathbb{Q}_2 -conjugacy class of elements of order 4.
- \mathbb{Q}_2 -conjugacy classes of elements of order 9: by Theorem 23(a), the injective homomorphism $\phi: \text{Gal}(\mathbb{Q}_2(\zeta_9)/\mathbb{Q}_2) \longrightarrow \mathbb{Z}_9^*$ is an isomorphism, and $\text{Im}(\phi) = \{\bar{1}, \bar{2}, \bar{4}, \bar{5}, \bar{7}, \bar{8}\}$. It follows from the above table of elements of Dic_{36} and (2.24) that there is a single \mathbb{Q}_2 -conjugacy class of elements of order 9.
- \mathbb{Q}_2 -conjugacy classes of elements of order 18: by Theorem 23(c),

$$\text{Gal}(\mathbb{Q}_2(\zeta_{18})/\mathbb{Q}_2) \cong \text{Gal}(\mathbb{Q}_2(\zeta_9)/\mathbb{Q}_2) \times \text{Gal}(\mathbb{Q}_2(\zeta_2)/\mathbb{Q}_2) \cong \text{Gal}(\mathbb{Q}_2(\zeta_9)/\mathbb{Q}_2),$$

which is cyclic of order 6. Thus the injective homomorphism $\phi: \text{Gal}(\mathbb{Q}_2(\zeta_{18})/\mathbb{Q}_2) \longrightarrow \mathbb{Z}_{18}^*$ is an isomorphism, and $\text{Im}(\phi) = \{\bar{1}, \bar{5}, \bar{7}, \bar{11}, \bar{13}, \bar{17}\}$. We conclude from the above table of elements of Dic_{36} and (2.24) that there is a single \mathbb{Q}_2 -conjugacy class of elements of order 18.

- From the above computations, for all $d \in \{1, 2, 3, 4, 6, 9, 18\}$, there is a single \mathbb{Q}_2 -conjugacy class of elements of order d , and hence $r_{\mathbb{Q}_2} = 7$.
- \mathbb{Q}_3 -conjugacy classes of elements of order 4: by Theorem 23(a), the injective homomorphism $\phi: \text{Gal}(\mathbb{Q}_3(\zeta_4)/\mathbb{Q}_3) \longrightarrow \mathbb{Z}_4^*$ is an isomorphism. As in the case of the \mathbb{Q}_2 -conjugacy classes of elements of order 4, we see that there is a single \mathbb{Q}_3 -conjugacy class of elements of order 4.
- \mathbb{Q}_3 -conjugacy classes of elements of order 9: by Theorem 23(b), the injective homomorphism $\phi: \text{Gal}(\mathbb{Q}_3(\zeta_9)/\mathbb{Q}_3) \longrightarrow \mathbb{Z}_9^*$ is an isomorphism (both groups are of order 6), and $\text{Im}(\phi) = \{\bar{1}, \bar{2}, \bar{4}, \bar{5}, \bar{7}, \bar{8}\}$. As in the case of the \mathbb{Q}_2 -conjugacy classes of elements of order 9, we see that there is a single \mathbb{Q}_3 -conjugacy class of elements of order 9.
- \mathbb{Q}_3 -conjugacy classes of elements of order 18: by Theorem 23(c),

$$\text{Gal}(\mathbb{Q}_3(\zeta_{18})/\mathbb{Q}_3) \cong \text{Gal}(\mathbb{Q}_3(\zeta_9)/\mathbb{Q}_3) \times \text{Gal}(\mathbb{Q}_3(\zeta_2)/\mathbb{Q}_3) \cong \text{Gal}(\mathbb{Q}_3(\zeta_9)/\mathbb{Q}_3),$$

which as we saw above is cyclic of order 6. It follows that the injective homomorphism $\phi: \text{Gal}(\mathbb{Q}_3(\zeta_{18})/\mathbb{Q}_3) \longrightarrow \mathbb{Z}_{18}^*$ is an isomorphism. As in the case of the \mathbb{Q}_2 -conjugacy classes

of elements of order 18, we see that there is a single \mathbb{Q}_3 -conjugacy class of elements of order 18.

- From the above computations, for all $d \in \{1, 2, 3, 4, 6, 9, 18\}$, there is a single \mathbb{Q}_3 -conjugacy class of elements of order d , and hence $r_{\mathbb{Q}_3} = 7$.
- Hence the rank of $K_{-1}(\mathbb{Z}[\text{Dic}_{36}])$ is given by $r = 1 - r_{\mathbb{Q}} + r_{\mathbb{Q}_2} - r_{\mathbb{F}_2} + r_{\mathbb{Q}_3} - r_{\mathbb{F}_3} = 1 - 7 + 7 - 3 + 7 - 3 = 2$ as required. \square

We complete this section by computing $K_{-1}(\mathbb{Z}[G])$, where G is a cyclic group of order p^q or $2p^q$, where p is prime and $q \in \mathbb{N}$, or of order 12 or 20. These results will also be used in the proof of Theorem 31.

Proposition 30. *Let $q \in \mathbb{N}$, and let p be a prime number.*

- The group $K_{-1}(\mathbb{Z}[\mathbb{Z}_{p^q}])$ is trivial.
- If p is odd then $K_{-1}(\mathbb{Z}[\mathbb{Z}_{2p^q}]) \cong \mathbb{Z}^r$, where $r = \sum_{j=1}^q \left[\mathbb{Z}_{p^j}^* : \langle \bar{2} \rangle_{\mathbb{Z}_{p^j}^*} \right]$, and where $\langle \bar{2} \rangle_{\mathbb{Z}_{p^j}^*}$ denotes the subgroup of $\mathbb{Z}_{p^j}^*$ generated by $\bar{2}$.
- The group $K_{-1}(\mathbb{Z}[\mathbb{Z}_{12}])$ is isomorphic to \mathbb{Z}^2 , and the group $K_{-1}(\mathbb{Z}[\mathbb{Z}_{20}])$ is isomorphic to \mathbb{Z}^3 .

Proof. As we mentioned at the beginning of Section 2.5.1, if G is Abelian then the group $K_{-1}(\mathbb{Z}[G])$ is torsion free. So if G is one of the given groups, by (2.9), it suffices to calculate the rank r of $K_{-1}(\mathbb{Z}[G])$.

(a) Let p be prime, and let $q \in \mathbb{N}$. Since \mathbb{Z}_{p^q} is cyclic, $r_{\mathbb{Q}}$ is equal to the number of divisors of p^q , hence $r_{\mathbb{Q}} = q + 1$. The elements of \mathbb{Z}_{p^q} are of order p^j , where $j \in \{0, 1, \dots, q\}$, and the set G'_p of p -regular elements of \mathbb{Z}_{p^q} is equal to $\{e\}$, hence $r_{\mathbb{F}_p} = 1$. We now determine the number of \mathbb{Q}_p -conjugacy classes. If $1 \leq j \leq q$, by Theorem 23(b), the injective homomorphism $\phi: \text{Gal}(\mathbb{Q}_p(\zeta_{p^j})/\mathbb{Q}_p) \rightarrow \mathbb{Z}_{p^j}^*$ is an isomorphism, so \mathbb{Z}_{p^q} possesses a single \mathbb{Q}_p -conjugacy of elements of order p^j , and thus $r_{\mathbb{Q}_p} = q + 1$. Hence $r = 1 - r_{\mathbb{Q}} + r_{\mathbb{Q}_p} - r_{\mathbb{F}_p} = 0$ by (2.10), and $K_{-1}(\mathbb{Z}[\mathbb{Z}_{p^q}])$ is trivial.

(b) Let p be an odd prime, let $q \in \mathbb{N}$, and let x be a generator of \mathbb{Z}_{2p^q} . In order to apply (2.10), we compute $r_{\mathbb{Q}}$, $r_{\mathbb{F}_2}$, $r_{\mathbb{F}_p}$, $r_{\mathbb{Q}_2}$ and $r_{\mathbb{Q}_p}$.

- Since \mathbb{Z}_{2p^q} is cyclic, we have $r_{\mathbb{Q}} = 2(q + 1)$.
- The set G'_p of p -regular elements of \mathbb{Z}_{2p^q} is equal to $\{e, x^{p^q}\}$, thus $r_{\mathbb{F}_p} = 2$.
- We now determine $r_{\mathbb{Q}_p}$. Since \mathbb{Z}_{2p^q} possesses a single element of order m , where $m \in \{1, 2\}$, it suffices to compute the number of \mathbb{Q}_p -conjugacy class of elements of order $2^\varepsilon p^j$, where $\varepsilon \in \{0, 1\}$, and $1 \leq j \leq q$. By Theorem 23(b), for all $j \in \{1, \dots, q\}$, the injective homomorphism $\phi: \text{Gal}(\mathbb{Q}_p(\zeta_{p^j})/\mathbb{Q}_p) \rightarrow \mathbb{Z}_{p^j}^*$ is an isomorphism, and so there is a single \mathbb{Q}_p -conjugacy class of elements of order p^j . By Theorem 23(c), $\text{Gal}(\mathbb{Q}_p(\zeta_{2p^j})/\mathbb{Q}_p) \cong \text{Gal}(\mathbb{Q}_p(\zeta_{p^j})/\mathbb{Q}_p) \times \text{Gal}(\mathbb{Q}_p(\zeta_2)/\mathbb{Q}_p) \cong \text{Gal}(\mathbb{Q}_p(\zeta_{p^j})/\mathbb{Q}_p)$, and by Theorem 23(b), the injective homomorphism $\phi: \text{Gal}(\mathbb{Q}_p(\zeta_{2p^j})/\mathbb{Q}_p) \rightarrow \mathbb{Z}_{2p^j}^*$ is an isomorphism. Thus for all $1 \leq j \leq q$, there is a single \mathbb{Q}_p -conjugacy class of elements of order $2p^j$. It follows that for every divisor m of $2p^q$, there is a single \mathbb{Q}_p -conjugacy class of elements of order m , whence $r_{\mathbb{Q}_p} = 2(q + 1)$.
- To compute r_F , where $F = \mathbb{Q}_2$ or \mathbb{F}_2 , we first make the following general remark. Since \mathbb{Z}_{2p^q} is Abelian, for all $f \in \mathbb{Z}_{2p^q}$, the (usual) conjugacy class $[f]$ of f is equal to $\{f\}$. With the

notation of Section 2.5.2, it follows from (2.24) that the cardinality of the F -conjugacy class $[f]_F$ is equal to $|\text{Im}(\phi)|$, where ϕ is as defined in (2.23). Since the F -conjugacy classes are pairwise disjoint, if $f \in \mathbb{Z}_{2p^q}$ we conclude that there are $[\mathbb{Z}_m^* : \text{Im}(\phi)]$ F -conjugacy classes of elements whose order is that of f . With this in mind, we compute $r_{\mathbb{Q}_2}$ and $r_{\mathbb{F}_2}$.

- To calculate $r_{\mathbb{Q}_2}$, first observe that since \mathbb{Z}_{2p^q} possesses a single element of order m , where $m \in \{1, 2\}$, it suffices to compute the number of \mathbb{Q}_2 -conjugacy class of elements of order $2^\varepsilon p^j$, where $\varepsilon \in \{0, 1\}$, and $1 \leq j \leq q$. Theorem 23(a) implies that the image of the injective homomorphism $\phi: \text{Gal}(\mathbb{Q}_2(\zeta_{p^j})/\mathbb{Q}_2) \longrightarrow \mathbb{Z}_{p^j}^*$ is equal to $\langle \overline{2} \rangle_{\mathbb{Z}_{p^j}^*}$. By the above re-

mark, it follows that the number of \mathbb{Q}_2 -conjugacy classes of elements of order p^j is equal to $[\mathbb{Z}_{p^j}^* : \langle \overline{2} \rangle_{\mathbb{Z}_{p^j}^*}]$. By Theorem 23(c), $\text{Gal}(\mathbb{Q}_2(\zeta_{2p^j})/\mathbb{Q}_2) \cong \text{Gal}(\mathbb{Q}_2(\zeta_{p^j})/\mathbb{Q}_2) \times \text{Gal}(\mathbb{Q}_2(\zeta_2)/\mathbb{Q}_2) \cong \text{Gal}(\mathbb{Q}_2(\zeta_{p^j})/\mathbb{Q}_2)$. So the image of the injective homomorphism $\phi: \text{Gal}(\mathbb{Q}_2(\zeta_{2p^j})/\mathbb{Q}_2) \longrightarrow \mathbb{Z}_{2p^j}^*$

is of order $|\langle \overline{2} \rangle_{\mathbb{Z}_{2p^j}^*}|$. Now $|\mathbb{Z}_{2p^q}^*| = |\mathbb{Z}_{p^q}^*|$, and it follows from the above remark that the

number of \mathbb{Q}_2 -conjugacy classes of elements of order $2p^j$ is also equal to $[\mathbb{Z}_{p^j}^* : \langle \overline{2} \rangle_{\mathbb{Z}_{p^j}^*}]$.

Since the elements of \mathbb{Z}_{2p^q} are of order 1, 2, p^j or $2p^j$, where $1 \leq j \leq q$, we deduce that

$$r_{\mathbb{Q}_2} = 2 + 2 \sum_{j=1}^q [\mathbb{Z}_{p^j}^* : \langle \overline{2} \rangle_{\mathbb{Z}_{p^j}^*}].$$

- To calculate $r_{\mathbb{F}_2}$, observe that the set of 2-regular elements of \mathbb{Z}_{2p^q} is equal to the union of e with the elements of order p^j , where $j \in \{1, \dots, q\}$. By Theorem 24, for all $j \in \{1, \dots, q\}$, the image of the injective homomorphism $\phi: \text{Gal}(\mathbb{F}_2(\zeta_{p^j})/\mathbb{F}_2) \longrightarrow \mathbb{Z}_{p^j}^*$ is equal to $\langle \overline{2} \rangle_{\mathbb{Z}_{p^j}^*}$. Using

the above remark once more, we see that the number of 2-regular \mathbb{F}_2 -conjugacy classes of elements of order p^j is given by $[\mathbb{Z}_{p^j}^* : \langle \overline{2} \rangle_{\mathbb{Z}_{p^j}^*}]$, and thus $r_{\mathbb{F}_2} = 1 + \sum_{j=1}^q [\mathbb{Z}_{p^j}^* : \langle \overline{2} \rangle_{\mathbb{Z}_{p^j}^*}]$.

- To conclude, by (2.10), we have $r = 1 - r_{\mathbb{Q}} + r_{\mathbb{Q}_2} - r_{\mathbb{F}_2} + r_{\mathbb{Q}_p} - r_{\mathbb{F}_p} = \sum_{j=1}^q [\mathbb{Z}_{p^j}^* : \langle \overline{2} \rangle_{\mathbb{Z}_{p^j}^*}]$ as required.

(c) Let $m = 4p$, where $p \in \{3, 5\}$. In order to apply (2.10), we now proceed to determine $r_{\mathbb{Q}}$, $r_{\mathbb{F}_2}$, $r_{\mathbb{F}_p}$, $r_{\mathbb{Q}_2}$ and $r_{\mathbb{Q}_p}$.

- Since \mathbb{Z}_m is cyclic, $r_{\mathbb{Q}}$ is equal to the number of divisors of $4p$, so $r_{\mathbb{Q}} = 6$.

- The set G'_2 of the 2-regular elements of \mathbb{Z}_{4p} consists of the trivial element and the elements of order p . By Theorem 24, the injective homomorphism $\phi: \text{Gal}(\mathbb{F}_2(\zeta_p)/\mathbb{F}_2) \longrightarrow \mathbb{Z}_p^*$ is an isomorphism, so there is a single \mathbb{F}_2 -conjugacy class of elements of order p , and hence $r_{\mathbb{F}_2} = 2$.

- The set G'_p of the p -regular elements of \mathbb{Z}_{4p} consists of the trivial element, the unique element of order 2, and the two elements of order 4. By Theorem 24, the injective homomorphism $\phi: \text{Gal}(\mathbb{F}_p(\zeta_4)/\mathbb{F}_p) \longrightarrow \mathbb{Z}_4^*$ is an isomorphism if $p = 3$, and the image of ϕ is equal to $\{\overline{1}\}$ if $p = 5$. As in the remark regarding the F -conjugacy classes used in part (b), we conclude that there is a single \mathbb{F}_p -conjugacy class of elements of order 4 if $p = 3$, and two \mathbb{F}_p -conjugacy classes of elements of order 4 if $p = 5$. It follows that $r_{\mathbb{F}_p} = 3$ if $p = 3$ and $r_{\mathbb{F}_p} = 4$ if $p = 5$.

- We now compute $r_{\mathbb{Q}_2}$. Since there is a single element of order 1 and 2, it suffices to determine the number of \mathbb{Q}_2 -conjugacy classes of elements of order 4 and of order $2^i p$,

where $i \in \{0, 1, 2\}$. By Theorem 23(c) (resp. Theorem 23(a)), the injective homomorphism $\phi: \text{Gal}(\mathbb{Q}_2(\zeta_4)/\mathbb{Q}_2) \rightarrow \mathbb{Z}_4^*$ (resp. $\phi: \text{Gal}(\mathbb{Q}_2(\zeta_p)/\mathbb{Q}_2) \rightarrow \mathbb{Z}_p^*$) is an isomorphism, so there is a single \mathbb{Q}_2 -conjugacy class of elements of order 4 (resp. of order p). If $i \geq 1$ then $\text{Gal}(\mathbb{Q}_2(\zeta_{2^i p})/\mathbb{Q}_2) \cong \text{Gal}(\mathbb{Q}_2(\zeta_p)/\mathbb{Q}_2) \times \text{Gal}(\mathbb{Q}_2(\zeta_{2^{i-1}})/\mathbb{Q}_2)$, and so the injective homomorphism $\phi: \text{Gal}(\mathbb{Q}_2(\zeta_{2^i p})/\mathbb{Q}_2) \rightarrow \mathbb{Z}_{2^i p}^*$ is an isomorphism by Theorem 23(a) and (c). Hence there is a single \mathbb{Q}_2 -conjugacy class of elements of order $2^i p$. So for any divisor d of $4p$, there is a single \mathbb{Q}_2 -conjugacy class of elements of order d , hence $r_{\mathbb{Q}_2} = 6$.

- We now compute $r_{\mathbb{Q}_p}$. Since there is a single element of order 1 and 2, it suffices to determine the number of \mathbb{Q}_p -conjugacy classes of elements of order 4 and of order $2^i p$, where $i \in \{0, 1, 2\}$. By Theorem 23(a), the injective homomorphism $\phi: \text{Gal}(\mathbb{Q}_p(\zeta_4)/\mathbb{Q}_p) \rightarrow \mathbb{Z}_4^*$ is an isomorphism if $p = 3$, and the image of ϕ is equal to $\{\bar{1}\}$ if $p = 5$. As in the remark regarding the F -conjugacy classes used in part (b), we conclude that there is a single \mathbb{Q}_p -conjugacy class of elements of order 4 if $p = 3$, and two \mathbb{Q}_p -conjugacy classes of elements of order 4 if $p = 5$. Since the injective homomorphism $\phi: \text{Gal}(\mathbb{Q}_p(\zeta_p)/\mathbb{Q}_p) \rightarrow \mathbb{Z}_p^*$ is an isomorphism by Theorem 23(b), there is a single \mathbb{Q}_p -conjugacy class of elements of order p . Further, since $\text{Gal}(\mathbb{Q}_p(\zeta_{2p})/\mathbb{Q}_p) \cong \text{Gal}(\mathbb{Q}_p(\zeta_p)/\mathbb{Q}_p)$ by Theorem 23(c), it follows from Theorem 23(b) that there is a single \mathbb{Q}_p -conjugacy class of elements of order $2p$. Finally, by Theorem 23(c), since $\text{Gal}(\mathbb{Q}_p(\zeta_{4p})/\mathbb{Q}_p) \cong \text{Gal}(\mathbb{Q}_p(\zeta_p)/\mathbb{Q}_p) \times \text{Gal}(\mathbb{Q}_p(\zeta_4)/\mathbb{Q}_p)$, it follows from Theorem 23(a) and (b) that the injective homomorphism $\phi: \text{Gal}(\mathbb{Q}_p(\zeta_{4p})/\mathbb{Q}_p) \rightarrow \mathbb{Z}_{4p}^*$ is an isomorphism if $p = 3$, and the image of ϕ is isomorphic to \mathbb{Z}_p^* if $p = 5$. As in the remark regarding the F -conjugacy classes used in part (b), we conclude that there is a single \mathbb{Q}_p -conjugacy class of elements of order $4p$ if $p = 3$, and two \mathbb{Q}_p -conjugacy classes of elements of order $4p$ if $p = 5$. Hence $r_{\mathbb{Q}_p} = 6$ if $p = 3$, and $r_{\mathbb{Q}_p} = 8$ if $p = 5$.

- Using (2.10) and the above computations, the rank r of $K_{-1}(\mathbb{Z}[\mathbb{Z}_{4p}])$ is given by $r = 1 - r_{\mathbb{Q}} + r_{\mathbb{Q}_2} - r_{\mathbb{F}_2} + r_{\mathbb{Q}_p} - r_{\mathbb{F}_p}$, so $r = 2$ if $p = 3$ and $r = 3$ if $p = 5$ as required. \square

2.6 The lower algebraic K -theory of the finite subgroups of $B_n(\mathbb{S}^2)$ for $4 \leq n \leq 11$

In this section, we bring together the results of the previous sections to compute the lower algebraic K -theory of the finite subgroups of $B_n(\mathbb{S}^2)$ for $4 \leq n \leq 11$. The results are summarised in the following theorem.

Theorem 31. *For $4 \leq n \leq 11$, the lower algebraic K -theory of the finite subgroups of $B_n(\mathbb{S}^2)$ is as given in Table 2.1.*

Remark 32. It was proved in [16, Theorem 3] that $K_{-i}(\mathbb{Z}[G]) = 0$ for any finite group G and for all $i \geq 2$.

Remark 33. Although the results of Theorem 31 deal with the lower algebraic K -theory of the finite subgroups of $B_n(\mathbb{S}^2)$ for $4 \leq n \leq 11$, these groups also occur as subgroups of $B_n(\mathbb{S}^2)$ for larger values of n . These values are given in the last column of Table 2.1, and are obtained from Theorem 2.

Finite group G	$\text{Wh}(G)$	$K_{-1}(\mathbb{Z}[G])$	$\tilde{K}_0(\mathbb{Z}[G])$	values of $n \geq 4$ for which G is realised in $B_n(\mathbb{S}^2)$
$\mathbb{Z}_m, m \in \{1, 2, 3, 4\}$	0	0	0	all
\mathbb{Z}_5	\mathbb{Z}	0	0	$n \equiv 0, 1, 2 \pmod{5}$
\mathbb{Z}_6	0	\mathbb{Z}	0	all
\mathbb{Z}_7	\mathbb{Z}^2	0	0	$n \equiv 0, 1, 2 \pmod{7}$
\mathbb{Z}_8	\mathbb{Z}	0	0	$n \not\equiv 3 \pmod{4}$
\mathbb{Z}_9	\mathbb{Z}^2	0	0	$n \equiv 0, 1, 2 \pmod{9}$
\mathbb{Z}_{10}	\mathbb{Z}^2	\mathbb{Z}	0	$n \equiv 0, 1, 2 \pmod{5}$
\mathbb{Z}_{11}	\mathbb{Z}^4	0	0	$n \equiv 0, 1, 2 \pmod{11}$
\mathbb{Z}_{12}	\mathbb{Z}	\mathbb{Z}^2	\mathbb{Z}_2	$n \equiv 0, 1, 2 \pmod{6}$
\mathbb{Z}_{14}	\mathbb{Z}^4	\mathbb{Z}^2	0	$n \equiv 0, 1, 2 \pmod{7}$
\mathbb{Z}_{16}	\mathbb{Z}^4	0	\mathbb{Z}_2	$n \equiv 0, 1, 2 \pmod{8}$
\mathbb{Z}_{18}	\mathbb{Z}^4	\mathbb{Z}^2	\mathbb{Z}_3	$n \equiv 0, 1, 2 \pmod{9}$
\mathbb{Z}_{20}	\mathbb{Z}^5	\mathbb{Z}^3	\mathbb{Z}_2^5	$n \equiv 0, 1, 2 \pmod{10}$
\mathbb{Z}_{22}	\mathbb{Z}^8	\mathbb{Z}	\mathbb{Z}_3	$n \equiv 0, 1, 2 \pmod{11}$
\mathcal{Q}_8	0	0	\mathbb{Z}_2	n even
Dic_{12}	0	\mathbb{Z}	\mathbb{Z}_2	$n \equiv 0, 2 \pmod{3}$
\mathcal{Q}_{16}	\mathbb{Z}	\mathbb{Z}_2	\mathbb{Z}_2	n even
Dic_{20}	\mathbb{Z}^2	$\mathbb{Z}_2 \oplus \mathbb{Z}$	\mathbb{Z}_2	$n \equiv 0, 2 \pmod{5}$
Dic_{24}	\mathbb{Z}	$\mathbb{Z}_2 \oplus \mathbb{Z}^2$	\mathbb{Z}_2^3	$n \equiv 0, 2 \pmod{6}$
T^*	0	\mathbb{Z}	\mathbb{Z}_2	n even
Dic_{28}	\mathbb{Z}^4	\mathbb{Z}	\mathbb{Z}_2	$n \equiv 0, 2 \pmod{7}$
\mathcal{Q}_{32}	\mathbb{Z}^4	\mathbb{Z}_2	\mathbb{Z}_2	$n \equiv 0, 2 \pmod{8}$
Dic_{36}	\mathbb{Z}^4	\mathbb{Z}^2	\mathbb{Z}_2^2	$n \equiv 0, 2 \pmod{9}$
Dic_{40}	\mathbb{Z}^5	$\mathbb{Z}_2 \oplus \mathbb{Z}^2$	\mathbb{Z}_2^3	$n \equiv 0, 2 \pmod{10}$
Dic_{44}	\mathbb{Z}^8	\mathbb{Z}	\mathbb{Z}_2	$n \equiv 0, 2 \pmod{11}$
O^*	\mathbb{Z}	$\mathbb{Z}_2 \oplus \mathbb{Z}$	\mathbb{Z}_2^2	$n \equiv 0, 2 \pmod{6}$

 Table 2.1: The lower algebraic K -theory of the finite subgroups of $B_n(\mathbb{S}^2)$, $n \leq 11$.

Proof of Theorem 31. By Theorem 2, the isomorphism classes of the maximal finite subgroups of $B_n(\mathbb{S}^2)$, where n runs over the elements of $\{4, \dots, 11\}$, are Dic_{4m} , where $m \in \{3, 4, \dots, 11\}$, \mathbb{Z}_{2q} , where $q \in \{4, 5, \dots, 10\}$, T^* and O^* . If we remove the condition of maximality of these subgroups, then we must also add Q_8 and \mathbb{Z}_r to the list, where $r \in \{1, 2, \dots, 7, 9, 11, 22\}$. We thus obtain the groups of the first column of Table 2.1 that are subgroups of $B_n(\mathbb{S}^2)$ for the values of n given in the last column. We divide the proof into several parts.

(a) If G is one of the groups appearing in Table 2.1 then $\text{Wh}(G)$ is obtained by applying Proposition 10.

(b) We determine $\tilde{K}_0(\mathbb{Z}[G])$, where G is one of the groups appearing in Table 2.1. By Theorem 11, $\tilde{K}_0(\mathbb{Z}[G])$ is trivial if G is isomorphic to \mathbb{Z}_n , where $n \in \{1, \dots, 11, 14\}$, and is non trivial if G is isomorphic to \mathbb{Z}_n , where $n \in \{12, 16, 18, 20, 22\}$. By [73, page 126, line 16], if G is isomorphic to \mathbb{Z}_{12} then $\tilde{K}_0(\mathbb{Z}[\mathbb{Z}_{12}]) \cong \mathbb{Z}_2$. Suppose that $G = \mathbb{Z}_{16}$. From [58, Page 416], there is a surjective homomorphism from $\tilde{K}_0(\mathbb{Z}[\mathbb{Z}_{16}])$ to $\prod_{\nu=1}^4 \tilde{K}_0(\mathbb{Z}[\zeta_\nu])$, where ζ_ν is a primitive 2^ν th root of unity, and whose kernel, denoted by W_3 in [58], is isomorphic to \mathbb{Z}_2 . From Theorem 11, $\tilde{K}(\mathbb{Z}[\zeta_\nu])$ is trivial for all $n = 1, \dots, 4$, and so $\tilde{K}_0(\mathbb{Z}[\mathbb{Z}_{16}]) \cong \mathbb{Z}_2$. By Theorem 14, $\tilde{K}_0(\mathbb{Z}[\mathbb{Z}_n])$ is isomorphic to \mathbb{Z}_3 if $n \in \{18, 22\}$, and to \mathbb{Z}_2^5 if $n = 20$. If $G = \text{Dic}_{4m}$, where $2 \leq m \leq 11$, or if $G = T^*$ or O^* then $\tilde{K}_0(\mathbb{Z}[G])$ is given by Theorem 12.

(c) We determine $K_{-1}(\mathbb{Z}[G])$, where G is one of the groups appearing in Table 2.1. We consider several cases.

(i) If $G = \mathbb{Z}_m$, where $m \in \{1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 7, 8, 9, 11, 16\}$, then $K_{-1}(\mathbb{Z}[G])$ is trivial by Proposition 30(a).

(ii) Let $G = \mathbb{Z}_m$, where $m \in \{6, 10, 14, 18, 22\}$. Then m is of the form $m = 2p^q$, where $q \in \mathbb{N}$ and p is an odd prime. By Proposition 30(b), $K_{-1}(\mathbb{Z}[G]) \cong \mathbb{Z}^r$, where $r = \sum_{j=1}^q \left[\mathbb{Z}_{p^j}^* : \langle \bar{2} \rangle_{\mathbb{Z}_{p^j}^*} \right]$.

A straightforward computation shows that $K_{-1}(\mathbb{Z}[\mathbb{Z}_6]) \cong K_{-1}(\mathbb{Z}[\mathbb{Z}_{10}]) \cong K_{-1}(\mathbb{Z}[\mathbb{Z}_{22}]) \cong \mathbb{Z}$, and $K_{-1}(\mathbb{Z}[\mathbb{Z}_{14}]) \cong K_{-1}(\mathbb{Z}[\mathbb{Z}_{18}]) \cong \mathbb{Z}^2$.

(iii) If $G = \mathbb{Z}_m$, where $m \in \{12, 20\}$, the results for $K_{-1}(\mathbb{Z}[G])$ are obtained from Proposition 30(c).

(iv) $K_{-1}(\mathbb{Z}[G])$ for $G = \text{Dic}_{4m}$, where $2 \leq m \leq 11$: we distinguish the following cases.

- If $m \in \{2, 4, 8\}$, the results are a consequence of Proposition 27.
- If $m \in \{3, 5, 7, 11\}$, the results follow from Theorem 25 and Proposition 26 (observe that if $m \in \{3, 5, 11\}$, $\bar{2}$ generates \mathbb{Z}_m^* , so $\lambda = 1$, while if $m = 7$, $\bar{-1} \notin \langle \bar{2} \rangle$, but $|\langle \bar{2} \rangle| = 3$, so $\lambda = 1$ also).
- If $m \in \{6, 9, 10\}$, by Propositions 20 and 29, it follows that $K_{-1}(\mathbb{Z}[\text{Dic}_{36}]) \cong \mathbb{Z}^2$, and $K_{-1}(\mathbb{Z}[\text{Dic}_{4m}]) \cong \mathbb{Z}_2 \oplus \mathbb{Z}^2$ if $m \in \{6, 10\}$.

(v) If $G = T^*$ or O^* then the results follow from Proposition 28.

This completes the proof of the results given in Table 2.1. □

Chapter 3

The braid group $B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)$, and the conjugacy classes of its maximal virtually cyclic subgroups

In this chapter, we focus our attention on the braid group $B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)$ of the sphere on four strings. The aim is to understand the structure of its maximal virtually cyclic subgroups. These results will be used in Chapter 4 to compute the lower algebraic K -theory of $B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)$, and to prove Theorem 1.

In Section 3.1, we start by recalling some properties of $B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)$. We then study the algebraic description of the finite subgroups of $B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)$ given by Theorem 2, which enables us to prove in Proposition 37 that $B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)$ may be expressed as an amalgamated product of T^* and \mathcal{Q}_{16} along their common normal subgroup that is isomorphic to \mathcal{Q}_8 . This will allow us to show that $B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)$ is hyperbolic in the sense of Gromov (as we shall see in Proposition 49, $B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)$ is virtually free). In order to do this, in Section 3.2, we study the structure of the maximal virtually cyclic subgroups of $B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)$, our main result being Theorem 41. Using [54], in Section 3.3, we show that the maximal infinite virtually cyclic subgroups of $B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)$ possess an infinite number of conjugacy classes.

3.1 Generalities about $B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)$

In this section, we state several results concerning $B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)$. Some basic facts and results about Artin (pure) braid groups and (pure) braid groups of surfaces may be found in Appendix B. As we shall see, $B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)$ is rather special, and possesses some very interesting properties that will allow us to calculate its lower K -theoretical groups. Unfortunately, if $n \geq 5$, $B_n(\mathbb{S}^2)$ does not share these properties. We start by recalling a presentation of $B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)$.

Theorem 34 ([30]). *The group $B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)$ admits the following presentation:*

generators: $\sigma_1, \sigma_2, \sigma_3$.

relations:

$$\begin{aligned}
\sigma_1\sigma_3 &= \sigma_3\sigma_1 \\
\sigma_1\sigma_2\sigma_1 &= \sigma_2\sigma_1\sigma_2 \\
\sigma_2\sigma_3\sigma_2 &= \sigma_3\sigma_2\sigma_3 \\
\sigma_1\sigma_2\sigma_3^2\sigma_2\sigma_1 &= 1.
\end{aligned} \tag{3.1}$$

The first three ‘Artin relations’ (also known as braid relations) will be used freely and without further comment in what follows. Since the given generators together with these three relations constitute a presentation of the Artin braid group B_4 (see (B.1) and (B.2)), $B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)$ is thus a quotient of B_4 .

Remark 35. It follows easily from Theorem 34 that the Abelianisation of $B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)$ is isomorphic to \mathbb{Z}_6 , and that the Abelianisation homomorphism $\pi: B_4(\mathbb{S}^2) \rightarrow \mathbb{Z}_6$ identifies the three generators to the single generator $\bar{1}$ of \mathbb{Z}_6 .

We may determine generators of representatives of the conjugacy classes of the finite subgroups of $B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)$ in terms of the generators of Theorem 34 as follows. First, according to Murasugi [68, Theorem A], any finite order element of $B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)$ is conjugate to a power of one of the following elements:

$$\begin{cases}
\alpha_0 = \sigma_1\sigma_2\sigma_3 & \text{(of order 8)} \\
\alpha_1 = \sigma_1\sigma_2\sigma_3^2 & \text{(of order 6)} \\
\alpha_2 = \sigma_1\sigma_2^2 & \text{(of order 4).}
\end{cases} \tag{3.2}$$

Let

$$\Delta_4 = \sigma_1\sigma_2\sigma_3\sigma_1\sigma_2\sigma_1 \tag{3.3}$$

denote the ‘half twist’ braid on four strings. It is a square root of the full twist braid Δ_4^2 described in (B.3) (see also Figures B.2(a) and (b) for illustrations of the half and full twist braid on six strings). The braid Δ_4^2 generates the centre of $B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)$ and is the unique element of $B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)$ of order 2 (this is true in general, see [38]). Using (3.2), this latter fact implies that:

$$\Delta_4^2 = \alpha_0^4 = \alpha_1^3 = \alpha_2^2. \tag{3.4}$$

Let $Q = \langle \alpha_0^2, \Delta_4 \rangle$. By [44, Theorem 1.3(3)], Q is isomorphic to \mathcal{Q}_8 , and is a normal subgroup of $B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)$. Further, it is well known (see [47, Lemma 29] for example) that:

$$\alpha_0\sigma_i\alpha_0^{-1} = \sigma_{i+1} \text{ for } i = 1, 2, \text{ and } \alpha_0^2\sigma_3\alpha_0^{-2} = \sigma_1, \tag{3.5}$$

and that:

$$\Delta_4\sigma_i\Delta_4^{-1} = \sigma_{4-i} \text{ for all } i = 1, 2, 3 \tag{3.6}$$

Note that relations (3.5) and (3.6) hold in B_4 , and are special cases of more general relations in $B_n(\mathbb{S}^2)$.

Remarks 36.

(a) By Theorem 2, the isomorphism classes of the maximal finite subgroups of $B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)$ are T^* and \mathcal{Q}_{16} .

(b) Within $B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)$, there is a single conjugacy class of each isomorphism class of T^* and \mathcal{Q}_{16} [47, Proposition 1.5(1)]. These subgroups may be realised algebraically as follows:

(i) \mathcal{Q}_{16} may be realised in $B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)$ as the subgroup $\langle \alpha_0, \Delta_4 \rangle$ (α_0 is of order 8 and Δ_4 is of order 4) [42]. In particular,

$$\Delta_4 \alpha_0 \Delta_4^{-1} = \alpha_0^{-1} \quad \text{and} \quad \alpha_0^4 = \Delta_4^2. \quad (3.7)$$

(ii) By [47, Remark 3.2], T^* may be realised in $B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)$ as the subgroup $\langle \sigma_1 \sigma_3^{-1}, \Delta_4 \rangle \rtimes \langle \alpha_1^2 \rangle \cong \mathcal{Q}_8 \rtimes \mathbb{Z}_3$. Note that the first factor of the semi-direct product is Q , since by equations (3.2) and (3.3), we have:

$$\alpha_0^{-2} \Delta_4 = \sigma_3^{-1} \sigma_2^{-1} \sigma_1^{-1} \sigma_3^{-1} \sigma_2^{-1} \sigma_1^{-1} \cdot \sigma_1 \sigma_2 \sigma_3 \sigma_1 \sigma_2 \sigma_1 = \sigma_1 \sigma_3^{-1}. \quad (3.8)$$

The action in the semi-direct product is given by $\alpha_1^2 \Delta_4 \alpha_1^{-2} = \sigma_1 \sigma_3^{-1}$ and $\alpha_1^2 \sigma_1 \sigma_3^{-1} \alpha_1^{-2} = \Delta_4 \sigma_1 \sigma_3^{-1} = \alpha_0^{-2}$. The only other isomorphism class of finite non-Abelian subgroups of $B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)$ is that of \mathcal{Q}_8 : the subgroups $Q = \langle \alpha_0^2, \Delta_4 \rangle$ and $Q' = \langle \alpha_0^2, \alpha_0 \Delta_4 \rangle$ of $\langle \alpha_0, \Delta_4 \rangle$ are isomorphic to \mathcal{Q}_8 and realise the two conjugacy classes of \mathcal{Q}_8 in $B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)$ [47, Proposition 1.5(2) and Theorem 1.6].

(c) By Theorem 2, the remaining finite subgroups are cyclic, and as we mentioned previously, are realised up to conjugacy by powers of the α_i , $i \in \{0, 1, 2\}$. For each finite cyclic subgroup, there is a single conjugacy class, with the exception of \mathbb{Z}_4 , which is realised by both of the non-conjugate subgroups $\langle \alpha_0^2 \rangle$ and $\langle \alpha_2 \rangle$ [47, Proposition 1.5(2) and Theorem 1.6].

As we mentioned above, Q is a normal subgroup of $B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)$. From this, we obtain the following decomposition of $B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)$ as an amalgamated product of two finite groups.

Proposition 37. $B_4(\mathbb{S}^2) \cong \mathcal{Q}_{16} *_{\mathcal{Q}_8} T^*$.

Proof. Let $\Gamma = B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)/Q$. Since $\sigma_1 \sigma_3^{-1} \in Q$ and $\langle \sigma_1 \sigma_3^{-1} \rangle$ is not normal in $B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)$ by Remarks 36(b)(ii), it follows that the normal closure of $\sigma_1 \sigma_3^{-1}$ in $B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)$ is Q , and that a presentation of Γ is obtained by adjoining the relation $\sigma_1 = \sigma_3$ to the presentation of $B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)$ given in Theorem 34. Thus Γ is generated by elements $\bar{\sigma}_1$ and $\bar{\sigma}_2$, subject to the two relations $\bar{\sigma}_1 \bar{\sigma}_2 \bar{\sigma}_1 = \bar{\sigma}_2 \bar{\sigma}_1 \bar{\sigma}_2$ and $(\bar{\sigma}_1 \bar{\sigma}_2 \bar{\sigma}_1)^2 = 1$. Let $\Lambda = \langle a, b \mid a^2 = b^3 = 1 \rangle$ denote the free product $\mathbb{Z}_2 * \mathbb{Z}_3$, and consider the map $\varphi: \Lambda \rightarrow \Gamma$ defined on the generators of Λ by $\varphi(a) = \bar{\sigma}_1 \bar{\sigma}_2 \bar{\sigma}_1$ and $\varphi(b) = \bar{\sigma}_1 \bar{\sigma}_2$. Since $(\varphi(b))^3 = (\bar{\sigma}_1 \bar{\sigma}_2)^3 = (\bar{\sigma}_1 \bar{\sigma}_2 \bar{\sigma}_1)^2 = (\varphi(a))^2 = 1$, φ extends to a homomorphism that is surjective since $\varphi(b^{-1}a) = \bar{\sigma}_1$ and $\varphi(a^{-1}b^2) = \bar{\sigma}_2$. Conversely, the map $\psi: \Gamma \rightarrow \Lambda$ defined on the generators of Γ by $\psi(\bar{\sigma}_1) = b^{-1}a$ and $\psi(\bar{\sigma}_2) = a^{-1}b^2$ extends to a homomorphism since:

$$\begin{aligned} \psi(\bar{\sigma}_1) \psi(\bar{\sigma}_2) \psi(\bar{\sigma}_1) &= b^{-1} a a^{-1} b^2 b^{-1} a = a \\ &= a^{-1} b^2 b^{-1} a a^{-1} b^2 = \psi(\bar{\sigma}_2) \psi(\bar{\sigma}_1) \psi(\bar{\sigma}_2) \quad \text{and} \\ (\psi(\bar{\sigma}_1) \psi(\bar{\sigma}_2) \psi(\bar{\sigma}_1))^2 &= a^2 = 1, \end{aligned}$$

and is surjective because $\psi(\bar{\sigma}_1 \bar{\sigma}_2 \bar{\sigma}_1) = a$ and $\psi(\bar{\sigma}_1 \bar{\sigma}_2) = b$. Hence φ is an isomorphism, and $\Gamma \cong \mathbb{Z}_2 * \mathbb{Z}_3$.

Let $G = \mathcal{Q}_{16} *_{\mathcal{Q}_8} \mathbb{T}^*$, and consider the following presentation of G with generators u, v, p, q, r that are subject to the relations:

$$\begin{cases} p^2 = q^2, qpq^{-1} = p^{-1}, rpr^{-1} = q, rqr^{-1} = pq, r^3 = 1 \\ u^4 = v^2, uvv^{-1} = u^{-1}, u^2 = p, v = q, \end{cases}$$

so that $\langle p, q, r \rangle \cong \mathbb{T}^*$, $\langle u, v \rangle \cong \mathcal{Q}_{16}$, and $\langle p, q, r \rangle \cap \langle u, v \rangle = H$, where $H = \langle p, q \rangle \cong \mathcal{Q}_8$. It follows from this presentation that H is normal in G and $G/H \cong \mathbb{Z}_2 * \mathbb{Z}_3$. Let $f: G \rightarrow B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)$ be the map defined on the generators of G by $f(u) = \alpha_0^{-1}$, $f(p) = \alpha_0^{-2}$, $f(v) = f(q) = \Delta_4$ and $f(r) = \alpha_1^2$. Using Remarks 36(b), we see that f respects the relations of G , and so extends to a homomorphism that sends H isomorphically onto Q . Further, $\alpha_1^3 = \Delta_4^2$ by equation (3.4). Thus $\alpha_1 = \Delta_4^2 \alpha_1^{-2}$, and since $B_4(\mathbb{S}^2) = \langle \alpha_0, \alpha_1 \rangle$ by [41, Theorem 3], we conclude that f is surjective. We thus obtain the following commutative diagram of short exact sequences:

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} 1 & \longrightarrow & H & \longrightarrow & G & \longrightarrow & G/H \longrightarrow 1 \\ & & \cong \downarrow f|_H & & \downarrow f & & \downarrow \hat{f} \\ 1 & \longrightarrow & Q & \longrightarrow & B_4(\mathbb{S}^2) & \longrightarrow & \Gamma \longrightarrow 1, \end{array}$$

where \hat{f} is the homomorphism induced by f on the quotients. Since f is surjective, \hat{f} is too, and the isomorphisms $G/H \cong \mathbb{Z}_2 * \mathbb{Z}_3 \cong \Gamma$ and the fact that $\mathbb{Z}_2 * \mathbb{Z}_3$ is Hopfian (see [25] for example) imply that \hat{f} is an isomorphism. The result is then a consequence of the 5-Lemma. \square

Remark 38. By Proposition 37, $B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)$ is isomorphic to an amalgam of finite groups. Using Bass-Serre theory of groups acting on trees, it follows that it is a virtually free group, and so is hyperbolic in the sense of Gromov (see [50] and [54, Section 1.1]). This important fact will be crucial in the computation of the lower algebraic K -theory of $B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)$.

3.2 Maximal virtually cyclic subgroups of $B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)$

As we mentioned at the beginning of Section 2.1, an infinite virtually cyclic group Γ is isomorphic to one of the following:

- (I) a semi-direct product of the form $\Gamma \cong F \rtimes_{\alpha} \mathbb{Z}$, where F is a finite group and the action α belongs to $\text{Hom}(\mathbb{Z}, \text{Aut}(F))$. Such a group Γ surjects onto \mathbb{Z} with finite kernel F .
- (II) an amalgamated product of the form $\Gamma \cong G_1 *_F G_2$, where G_1 and G_2 are finite groups containing a common subgroup F of index 2 in both G_1 and G_2 . Such a group Γ surjects onto the infinite dihedral group Dih_{∞} with finite kernel F .

We shall say that these infinite virtually cyclic groups are of *Type I* or of *Type II* respectively.

Recall from Remarks 36(a) and (b) that up to isomorphism, the maximal finite subgroups of $B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)$ are \mathcal{Q}_{16} and \mathbb{T}^* , and that there exists a single conjugacy class of each. Since $\text{Out}(\mathcal{Q}_8) \cong S_3$, there are three isomorphism classes of Type I groups of the form $\mathcal{Q}_8 \rtimes \mathbb{Z}$, and that we denote by $\mathcal{Q}_8 \rtimes_j \mathbb{Z}$, where $j \in \{1, 2, 3\}$, and for which the action is of order j [47, Definition 4(1)(e)]. More precisely, if we take the presentation of \mathcal{Q}_8 given by (2.1) and adjoin a new generator z :

- (i) $\mathcal{Q}_8 \rtimes_1 \mathbb{Z}$ is the group obtained by adding the relations $[z, x] = [z, y] = 1$, where $[u, v] = uvu^{-1}v^{-1}$ denotes the commutator of the elements u and v , so $\mathcal{Q}_8 \rtimes_1 \mathbb{Z} \cong \mathcal{Q}_8 \times \mathbb{Z}$.
- (ii) $\mathcal{Q}_8 \rtimes_2 \mathbb{Z}$ is the group obtained by adding the relations $zxz^{-1} = y$ and $zyz^{-1} = x$ (so $zxyz^{-1} = (xy)^{-1}$).
- (iii) $\mathcal{Q}_8 \rtimes_3 \mathbb{Z}$ is the group obtained by adding the relations $zxz^{-1} = y$ and $zyz^{-1} = xy$ (so $zxyz^{-1} = x$).

Up to a finite number of exceptions, the isomorphism classes of the infinite virtually cyclic subgroups of $B_n(\mathbb{S}^2)$ were classified in [47] for all $n \geq 4$. In the case $n = 4$, the classification is as follows.

Theorem 39 ([47, Theorem 5]). *Every infinite virtually cyclic subgroups of $B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)$ is isomorphic to one of the following groups:*

- (a) subgroups of Type I: $\mathbb{Z}_k \times \mathbb{Z}$, $k \in \{1, 2, 4\}$; $\mathbb{Z}_4 \rtimes \mathbb{Z}$ for the non-trivial action; and $\mathcal{Q}_8 \rtimes_j \mathbb{Z}$ for $j \in \{1, 2, 3\}$.
- (b) subgroups of Type II: $\mathbb{Z}_4 *_{\mathbb{Z}_2} \mathbb{Z}_4$, $\mathbb{Z}_8 *_{\mathbb{Z}_4} \mathbb{Z}_8$, $\mathbb{Z}_8 *_{\mathbb{Z}_4} \mathcal{Q}_8$, $\mathcal{Q}_8 *_{\mathbb{Z}_4} \mathcal{Q}_8$, $\mathcal{Q}_{16} *_{\mathcal{Q}_8} \mathcal{Q}_{16}$.

For each of the Type II subgroups given in Theorem 39(b), abstractly there is a single isomorphism class, with the exception of $\mathcal{Q}_{16} *_{\mathcal{Q}_8} \mathcal{Q}_{16}$ for which there are two isomorphism classes [47, Proposition 11]. In this exceptional case, we recall the following result concerning the structure of the two classes, and their realisation in $B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)$.

Proposition 40 ([47, Propositions 11 and 78]). *Abstractly, there are exactly two isomorphism classes of the amalgamated product $\mathcal{Q}_{16} *_{\mathcal{Q}_8} \mathcal{Q}_{16}$, possessing the following presentations:*

$$\Gamma_1 = \langle a, b, x, y \mid a^4 = b^2, x^4 = y^2, bab^{-1} = a^{-1}, yxy^{-1} = x^{-1}, x^2 = a^2, y = b \rangle \quad (3.9)$$

and

$$\Gamma_2 = \langle a, b, x, y \mid a^4 = b^2, x^4 = y^2, bab^{-1} = a^{-1}, yxy^{-1} = x^{-1}, x^2 = b, y = a^2b \rangle. \quad (3.10)$$

Further, for $i \in \{1, 2\}$, $B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)$ possesses a subgroup G_i isomorphic to Γ_i .

With Chapter 4 in view, most of the rest of this chapter will be devoted to the problem of deciding which subgroups of $B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)$ are maximal within the family of virtually cyclic subgroups. In what follows, we refer to such a subgroup as a *maximal* virtually cyclic group (thus the word ‘maximal’ will be used to qualify the notion of virtually cyclic group).

Theorem 41.

- (a) Let G be a maximal infinite virtually cyclic subgroup of $B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)$. Then G is isomorphic to one of the following groups: $\mathcal{Q}_8 \rtimes \mathbb{Z}$ for one of the three possible actions, or $\mathcal{Q}_{16} *_{\mathcal{Q}_8} \mathcal{Q}_{16}$.
- (b) If G is a subgroup of $B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)$ isomorphic to Γ^* then it is maximal as a virtually cyclic subgroup.
- (c) For each $j \in \{1, 2, 3\}$, there are subgroups of $B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)$ isomorphic to $\mathcal{Q}_8 \rtimes_j \mathbb{Z}$ that are maximal as virtually cyclic subgroups, and others that are non maximal.
- (d) There exist subgroups of $B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)$ isomorphic to $\mathcal{Q}_{16} *_{\mathcal{Q}_8} \mathcal{Q}_{16}$ that are maximal as virtually cyclic subgroups, and others that are non maximal.

The proof of Theorem 41 is long, and will be split into three sections, Section 3.2.1, where we shall prove parts (a) and (b), Section 3.2.2, where we shall prove parts (c) and (d), with the exception of the case $j = 1$ in part (c), and Section 3.2.3, where we prove part (c) in this exceptional case. As we mentioned in Remark 38, $B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)$ is hyperbolic in the sense of Gromov. The following proposition implies that there are no infinite ascending chains of infinite virtually cyclic subgroup of $B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)$.

Proposition 42 ([55, Propositions 5,6 and Remark 7]). *Every infinite virtually cyclic subgroup of a Gromov hyperbolic group is contained in a unique maximal virtually cyclic subgroup.*

3.2.1 Proof of parts (a) and (b) of Theorem 41

The statement of the following proposition is that of parts (a) and (b) of Theorem 41.

Proposition 43.

(a) *Let G be a maximal virtually cyclic subgroup of $B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)$. Then G is isomorphic to one of the following groups: T^* , $\mathcal{Q}_8 \rtimes \mathbb{Z}$ for one of the three possible actions, or $\mathcal{Q}_{16} *_{\mathcal{Q}_8} \mathcal{Q}_{16}$.*

(b) *If G is a subgroup of $B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)$ isomorphic to T^* then it is maximal as a virtually cyclic subgroup.*

Before proving Proposition 43, note that if G is infinite in part (a), we will prove that G cannot be isomorphic to one of the other infinite virtually cyclic groups of $B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)$ given in Theorem 39. The question of whether there actually exist maximal virtually cyclic subgroups of $B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)$ isomorphic to $\mathcal{Q}_8 \rtimes \mathbb{Z}$ or to $\mathcal{Q}_{16} *_{\mathcal{Q}_8} \mathcal{Q}_{16}$ will be dealt with in Section 3.2.2.

Proof of Proposition 43. Suppose that G is a maximal virtually cyclic subgroup of $B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)$.

(a) (i) First assume that G is finite. Then G is a maximal finite subgroup of $B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)$, so is isomorphic to either \mathcal{Q}_{16} or T^* by Theorem 2. Suppose that $G \cong \mathcal{Q}_{16}$. Since $B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)$ possesses a single conjugacy class of subgroups isomorphic to \mathcal{Q}_{16} by Remarks 36(b), by Proposition 40, there exists a subgroup of $B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)$ isomorphic to the amalgamated product $\mathcal{Q}_{16} *_{\mathcal{Q}_8} \mathcal{Q}_{16}$, of which one of the factors is G , so G is not maximal as a virtually cyclic subgroup. So G must be isomorphic to T^* .

(ii) Now assume that G is infinite. We separate the cases where G is of Type I and Type II respectively.

(A) We first suppose that G is of Type I, so $G = F \rtimes \mathbb{Z}$, for some action of \mathbb{Z} on F , where F is finite and is the torsion subgroup of G . Suppose that F is either trivial or is isomorphic to \mathbb{Z}_2 or \mathbb{Z}_4 , and let u be a generator of the \mathbb{Z} -factor of G . Up to conjugation, we claim that $F \subset \langle \alpha_0^2 \rangle$. If F is trivial or isomorphic to \mathbb{Z}_2 then $F \subset \langle \Delta_4^2 \rangle \subset \langle \alpha_0^2 \rangle$ since $\alpha_0^4 = \Delta_4^2$. So suppose that $F \cong \mathbb{Z}_4$. By Remarks 36(c), $B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)$ admits two conjugacy classes of subgroups isomorphic to \mathbb{Z}_4 , generated respectively by α_0^2 and α_2 . But since u normalises F and the normaliser of $\langle \alpha_2 \rangle$ in $B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)$ is finite [47, Proposition 8(b)], it follows that F is conjugate to $\langle \alpha_0^2 \rangle$. This proves the claim, and so conjugating G if necessary, we may suppose that $F \subset \langle \alpha_0^2 \rangle$. Since $Q = \langle \alpha_0^2, \Delta_4 \rangle$ is normal in $B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)$ and $Q \cong \mathcal{Q}_8$ by [44, Theorem 1.3(3)], the subgroup $\langle \alpha_0^2, \Delta_4, u \rangle$ is isomorphic to one of the three Type I groups $\mathcal{Q}_8 \rtimes_j \mathbb{Z}$ of Theorem 39(a), where $j \in \{1, 2, 3\}$, and admits $\langle \alpha_0^2, u \rangle$ as a proper subgroup. Now G is a subgroup of $\langle \alpha_0^2, u \rangle$, so G is non maximal as a virtually cyclic subgroup of $B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)$. The result in this case is then a consequence of Theorem 39(a).

(B) Now suppose that G is a Type II subgroup of $B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)$ that is non isomorphic to $\mathcal{Q}_{16} *_{\mathcal{Q}_8} \mathcal{Q}_{16}$. By Theorem 39(b), we may write $G = G_1 *_H G_2$, where either:

- (1) G_1 and G_2 are subgroups of $B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)$ isomorphic to \mathcal{Q}_8 or \mathbb{Z}_8 , and $H = G_1 \cap G_2$ is isomorphic to \mathbb{Z}_4 , or
- (2) G_1 and G_2 are subgroups of $B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)$ isomorphic to \mathbb{Z}_4 , and $H = G_1 \cap G_2 = \langle \Delta_4^2 \rangle$.

Note that G_1 and G_2 are not necessarily isomorphic. By Remarks 36, in $B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)$, there are two conjugacy classes of subgroups isomorphic to \mathcal{Q}_8 represented by Q and Q' , one conjugacy class of subgroups isomorphic to \mathbb{Z}_8 , represented by $\langle \alpha_0 \rangle$, and two conjugacy classes of subgroups isomorphic to \mathbb{Z}_4 , represented by $\langle \alpha_0^2 \rangle$ and $\langle \alpha_0 \Delta_4 \rangle$ (this is because the elements $\alpha_0 \Delta_4$ and α_2 generate conjugate subgroups of order 4). Conjugating G if necessary, we may suppose that G_1 is equal to Q , Q' or $\langle \alpha_0 \rangle$ in case (1), and is equal to $\langle \alpha_0^2 \rangle$ or $\langle \alpha_0 \Delta_4 \rangle$ in case (2). Furthermore, there exists $\lambda \in B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)$ such that $G_2 = \lambda G'_2 \lambda^{-1}$, where G'_2 is equal to Q , Q' or $\langle \alpha_0 \rangle$ in case (1), and is equal to $\langle \alpha_0^2 \rangle$ or $\langle \alpha_0 \Delta_4 \rangle$ in case (2). Set $L = \langle \alpha_0, \Delta_4 \rangle$. Then G_1 and G'_2 are subgroups of L , and Q is a subgroup of L that is normal in $B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)$, so Q is a subgroup of $L \cap \lambda L \lambda^{-1}$. Since $L \cong \lambda L \lambda^{-1} \cong \mathcal{Q}_{16}$ and $G = \langle G_1 \cup G_2 \rangle \subsetneq \langle L \cup \lambda L \lambda^{-1} \rangle$, it follows that $\langle L \cup \lambda L \lambda^{-1} \rangle$ is infinite and $L \cap \lambda L \lambda^{-1} = Q$ because Q is of index 2 in both L and $\lambda L \lambda^{-1}$. We conclude from [45, Lemma 15] that $\langle L \cup \lambda L \lambda^{-1} \rangle \cong L *_Q L \cong \mathcal{Q}_{16} *_{\mathcal{Q}_8} \mathcal{Q}_{16}$. Thus G is a non-maximal virtually cyclic subgroup of $B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)$, and it follows from Theorem 39(b) that any maximal virtually cyclic subgroup of $B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)$ of Type II must be isomorphic to $\mathcal{Q}_{16} *_{\mathcal{Q}_8} \mathcal{Q}_{16}$.

(b) By Theorem 39, none of the infinite virtually cyclic subgroups of $B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)$ admit subgroups isomorphic to T^* , so any subgroup of $B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)$ isomorphic to T^* is maximal as a virtually cyclic subgroup. Combined with part (a)(i) of the proof, this shows in fact that G is a finite maximal virtually cyclic subgroup if and only if $G \cong T^*$. \square

This completes the proof of parts (a) and (b) of Theorem 41.

3.2.2 Proof of parts (c) and (d) of Theorem 41

We now turn to parts (c) and (d) of Theorem 41, which may be regarded as a converse of part (a) in the case that G is infinite. We first prove part (c) of Theorem 41 with the exception of the existence of $\mathcal{Q}_8 \times \mathbb{Z}$ as a maximal virtually cyclic subgroup of $B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)$, which will be dealt with in Section 3.2.3. Before doing so, we state and prove the following lemma.

Lemma 44. *Let $\pi: B_4(\mathbb{S}^2) \rightarrow \mathbb{Z}_6$ denote the Abelianisation homomorphism described in Remark 35.*

- (a) *If H is a subgroup of $B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)$ that is isomorphic to either \mathbb{Z}_8 , \mathcal{Q}_8 or \mathcal{Q}_{16} then $\pi(H) \subset \langle \bar{3} \rangle$.*
- (b) *If G is a subgroup of $B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)$ that is isomorphic to an amalgamated product of one of the groups $\mathcal{Q}_{16} *_{\mathcal{Q}_8} \mathcal{Q}_{16}$, $\mathcal{Q}_8 *_{\mathbb{Z}_4} \mathcal{Q}_8$, $\mathcal{Q}_8 *_{\mathbb{Z}_4} \mathbb{Z}_8$ or $\mathbb{Z}_8 *_{\mathbb{Z}_4} \mathbb{Z}_8$ then $\pi(G) \subset \langle \bar{3} \rangle$.*

Proof.

(a) Consider the subgroup $K = \langle \alpha_0, \Delta_4 \rangle$. As we mentioned in the proof of Proposition 43, K contains representatives of the conjugacy classes of all subgroups of $B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)$ that are isomorphic to \mathbb{Z}_8 , \mathcal{Q}_8 or \mathcal{Q}_{16} . So there exists $\lambda \in B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)$ such that $\lambda H \lambda^{-1} \subset K$. Now $\pi(\alpha_0) = \bar{3}$ and $\pi(\Delta_4) = \bar{0}$, thus $\pi(K) \subset \langle \bar{3} \rangle$, which yields the result.

(b) If G is a subgroup of $B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)$ that is isomorphic to one of the given amalgamated products then by Remarks 36(c), the factors appearing in the amalgamation are subgroups of conjugates of K , and thus $\pi(G) \subset \pi(K) \subset \langle \overline{3} \rangle$ by part (a). \square

To prove Theorem 41(c), for each $j \in \{1, 2, 3\}$, we shall exhibit two subgroups of $B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)$ that are isomorphic $\mathcal{Q}_8 \rtimes_j \mathbb{Z}$, one of which is maximal as a virtually cyclic subgroup of $B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)$, and the other of which is non maximal. For the case $j = 1$, the proof of the existence of a maximal virtually cyclic subgroup of $B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)$ that is isomorphic to $\mathcal{Q}_8 \times \mathbb{Z}$ is long, and will be treated separately in Section 3.2.3. With the exception of this case, the statement of the following proposition is that of parts (c) and (d) of Theorem 41.

Proposition 45.

- (a) For each $j \in \{1, 2, 3\}$, there are subgroups of $B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)$ isomorphic to $\mathcal{Q}_8 \rtimes_j \mathbb{Z}$ that are non maximal as virtually cyclic subgroups.
- (b) For each $j \in \{2, 3\}$, there are subgroups of $B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)$ isomorphic to $\mathcal{Q}_8 \rtimes_j \mathbb{Z}$ that are maximal as virtually cyclic subgroups.
- (c) There exist subgroups of $B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)$ isomorphic to $\mathcal{Q}_{16} *_{\mathcal{Q}_8} \mathcal{Q}_{16}$ that are maximal as virtually cyclic subgroups, and others that are non maximal.

Proof of Proposition 45.

(a) By Proposition 40, for $i = 1, 2$, $B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)$ possesses a subgroup G_i that is isomorphic to the amalgamated product Γ_i given by equations (3.9) and (3.10), and so admits a presentation given by the corresponding equation. The amalgamating subgroup $\Gamma = \langle a^2, b \rangle = \langle x^2, y \rangle$ is isomorphic to \mathcal{Q}_8 , and the element $a^{-1}x$ is a product of elements chosen alternately from the two sets $\langle a, b \rangle \setminus \langle a^2, b \rangle$ and $\langle x, y \rangle \setminus \langle x^2, y \rangle$, so is of infinite order by standard properties of amalgamated products. Consider the subgroup $H_i = \langle \Gamma_i \cup \{a^{-1}x\} \rangle$ of G_i . One may check that $\langle a^{-1}x \rangle$ acts by conjugation on $\langle a^2, b \rangle$. If $i = 1$ then:

$$\begin{cases} a^{-1}x \cdot a^2 \cdot x^{-1}a = a^2 \\ a^{-1}x \cdot b \cdot x^{-1}a = a^{-1}xyx^{-1}a = a^{-1}xyx^{-1}y^{-1}ya = a^{-1}x^2ya = abab^{-1}b = b \\ a^{-1}x \cdot a^2b \cdot x^{-1}a = a^2b, \end{cases} \quad (3.11)$$

and hence $H_1 \cong \mathcal{Q}_8 \times \mathbb{Z}$. If $i = 2$, a similar computation shows that conjugation by $a^{-1}x$ permutes cyclically a^2, b^{-1} and $a^{-2}b^{-1}$, and thus $H_2 \cong \mathcal{Q}_8 \rtimes_3 \mathbb{Z}$. In each case, $H_i \subsetneq G_i$ because $[G_i : H_i] = 2$. Now G_i is isomorphic to $\mathcal{Q}_{16} *_{\mathcal{Q}_8} \mathcal{Q}_{16}$, and so H_i is non maximal as a virtually cyclic subgroup of $B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)$, which proves the statement for $j \in \{1, 3\}$. It thus remains to treat the case $j = 2$. Using equation (3.11), note that in G_1 , the action by conjugation of $xa^{-1}x$ on Γ is as follows:

$$\begin{cases} xa^{-1}x \cdot a^2 \cdot x^{-1}ax^{-1} = xa^2x^{-1} = a^2 \\ xa^{-1}x \cdot b \cdot x^{-1}ax^{-1} = xyx^{-1} = xyx^{-1}y^{-1}y = x^2y = a^2b \\ xa^{-1}x \cdot a^2b \cdot x^{-1}ax^{-1} = a^4b = b^{-1}. \end{cases} \quad (3.12)$$

Now $xa^{-1}x$ is of infinite order, so we conclude from equation (3.12) that the subgroup $\langle \Gamma \cup \{xa^{-1}x\} \rangle$ is isomorphic to $\mathcal{Q}_8 \rtimes_2 \mathbb{Z}$. Furthermore, this subgroup is contained (strictly) in G_1 , so is non maximal.

(b) First let $j = 2$. Consider the subgroup $H = \langle Q \cup \{\sigma_1\} \rangle$ of $B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)$. By Proposition 42, H is contained in a maximal virtually cyclic subgroup M of $B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)$. Since Q is normal in $B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)$ and σ_1 is of infinite order, H must be isomorphic to a semi-direct product of the form $\mathcal{Q}_8 \rtimes_k \mathbb{Z}$ for some $k \in \{1, 2, 3\}$. To determine k , we study the action by conjugation of σ_1 on Q . Using equation (3.8), we have:

$$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \sigma_1 \cdot \alpha_0^2 \cdot \sigma_1^{-1} = \sigma_1 \alpha_0^2 \sigma_1^{-1} \alpha_0^{-2} \alpha_0^2 = \sigma_1 \sigma_3^{-1} \alpha_0^2 \quad \text{by equation (3.5)} \\ \quad = \alpha_0^{-2} \Delta_4 \alpha_0^2 = \alpha_0^{-4} \Delta_4 = \Delta_4^{-1} \quad \text{by equation (3.7)} \\ \sigma_1 \cdot \Delta_4^{-1} \cdot \sigma_1^{-1} = \sigma_1 \Delta_4^{-1} \sigma_1^{-1} \Delta_4 \Delta_4^{-1} = \sigma_1 \sigma_3^{-1} \Delta_4^{-1} \quad \text{by equation (3.6)} \\ \quad = \alpha_0^{-2} \quad \text{by equation (3.8)} \\ \sigma_1 \cdot \alpha_0^2 \Delta_4 \cdot \sigma_1^{-1} = \Delta_4^{-1} \alpha_0^2 = \alpha_0^2 \Delta_4. \end{array} \right. \quad (3.13)$$

Since σ_1 is of infinite order, H is thus isomorphic to $\mathcal{Q}_8 \rtimes_2 \mathbb{Z}$ because the action fixes the subgroup $\langle \alpha_0^2 \Delta_4 \rangle$ of order 4 of Q , and exchanges $\langle \alpha_0^2 \rangle$ and Δ_4 . But $\pi(\sigma_1) = \bar{1} \notin \langle \bar{3} \rangle$, so H is not contained in any subgroup of the form $\mathcal{Q}_8 *_{\mathbb{Z}_4} \mathcal{Q}_8$, $\mathcal{Q}_8 *_{\mathbb{Z}_4} \mathbb{Z}_8$ or $\mathcal{Q}_{16} *_{\mathcal{Q}_8} \mathcal{Q}_{16}$ by Lemma 44(b). It cannot be contained either in a subgroup isomorphic to $\mathcal{Q}_8 \times \mathbb{Z}$ or $\mathcal{Q}_8 \rtimes_3 \mathbb{Z}$ because the actions on Q are not compatible. This implies that M , which is maximal in $B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)$ as a virtually cyclic subgroup, must also be isomorphic to $\mathcal{Q}_8 \rtimes_2 \mathbb{Z}$.

Now let $j = 3$. As in the case $j = 2$, if there exists a subgroup L of $B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)$ that is isomorphic to $\mathcal{Q}_8 \rtimes_3 \mathbb{Z}$, it cannot be contained in a subgroup of $B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)$ isomorphic to $\mathcal{Q}_8 \times \mathbb{Z}$ or to $\mathcal{Q}_8 \rtimes_2 \mathbb{Z}$. Moreover, by Lemma 44(b), if $\pi(L) \not\subset \langle \bar{3} \rangle$ then L is not contained in any subgroup of $B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)$ isomorphic to $\mathcal{Q}_8 *_{\mathbb{Z}_4} \mathcal{Q}_8$, $\mathbb{Z}_8 *_{\mathbb{Z}_4} \mathbb{Z}_8$, $\mathcal{Q}_8 *_{\mathbb{Z}_4} \mathbb{Z}_8$ or $\mathcal{Q}_{16} *_{\mathcal{Q}_8} \mathcal{Q}_{16}$. As in the previous paragraph, we conclude using Proposition 42 that L is contained in a maximal virtually cyclic subgroup of $B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)$ that must also be isomorphic to $\mathcal{Q}_8 \rtimes_3 \mathbb{Z}$. To prove the result, we exhibit such a subgroup L . Consider the action by conjugation of σ_2 on Q :

$$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \sigma_2 \cdot \alpha_0^2 \cdot \sigma_2^{-1} = \alpha_0 \cdot \alpha_0^{-1} \sigma_2 \alpha_0 \cdot \alpha_0 \sigma_2^{-1} \alpha_0^{-1} \cdot \alpha_0 \\ \quad = \alpha_0 \sigma_1 \sigma_3^{-1} \alpha_0 \quad \text{by equation (3.5)} \\ \quad = \alpha_0 \alpha_0^{-2} \Delta_4 \alpha_0 \quad \text{by equation (3.8)} \\ \quad = \alpha_0^{-2} \Delta_4 = (\alpha_0^2 \Delta_4)^{-1} \quad \text{by equation (3.7)} \\ \sigma_2 \cdot \Delta_4 \cdot \sigma_2^{-1} = \sigma_2 \Delta_4 \sigma_2^{-1} \Delta_4^{-1} \cdot \Delta_4 = \Delta_4 \\ \sigma_2 \cdot \alpha_0^2 \Delta_4 \cdot \sigma_2^{-1} = \alpha_0^{-2} \Delta_4 \cdot \Delta_4 = \alpha_0^2. \end{array} \right. \quad (3.14)$$

In particular, $\sigma_2^4 x \sigma_2^{-4} = x$ for all $x \in Q$. This implies that the action by conjugation of $z = \sigma_2^7 \sigma_1$ on the elements of Q is the same as that of $\sigma_2^3 \sigma_1$. By equations (3.13) and (3.14), this action is as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} \alpha_0^2 &\xrightarrow{\sigma_1} \Delta_4^{-1} \xrightarrow{\sigma_2^3} \Delta_4^{-1} \\ \Delta_4^{-1} &\xrightarrow{\sigma_1} \alpha_0^{-2} \xrightarrow{\sigma_2^3} (\alpha_0^2 \Delta_4)^{-1} \\ (\alpha_0^2 \Delta_4)^{-1} &\xrightarrow{\sigma_2^3 \sigma_1} \Delta_4^{-1} \alpha_0^{-2} \Delta_4 = \alpha_0^2. \end{aligned}$$

Hence the action by conjugation of z on Q is of order 3. Further, $\pi(z) = \bar{2} \notin \langle \bar{3} \rangle$, which shows that $L = \langle Q \cup \{z\} \rangle$ is not contained in any subgroup isomorphic to an amalgamated product of the form $\mathcal{Q}_8 *_{\mathbb{Z}_4} \mathcal{Q}_8$, $\mathbb{Z}_8 *_{\mathbb{Z}_4} \mathbb{Z}_8$, $\mathcal{Q}_8 *_{\mathbb{Z}_4} \mathbb{Z}_8$ or $\mathcal{Q}_{16} *_{\mathcal{Q}_8} \mathcal{Q}_{16}$ by Lemma 44(b). Observe that by (B.5), the permutation associated to z is $(1, 2, 3)$, and so $z^3 \in P_4(\mathbb{S}^2)$. To prove that $L \cong \mathcal{Q}_8 \rtimes_3 \mathbb{Z}$, it remains to show that z is of infinite order. To achieve this, we shall write z^3 in terms of the direct product decomposition (B.10) of $P_4(\mathbb{S}^2)$, which comes down to expressing z^3 in terms of the basis $(A_{1,4}, A_{2,4})$ of the free group $\pi_1(\mathbb{S}^2 \setminus \{z_1, z_2, z_3\}, z_4)$ that is the kernel of the homomorphism $(p_{4,3})_*$ of (B.9). Geometrically, this homomorphism is given by forgetting the last string (see (B.6) and (B.7)). As mentioned in Appendix B, the group $P_4(\mathbb{S}^2)$ is generated by the set $\{A_{i,j}\}_{1 \leq i < j \leq 4}$, where $A_{i,j}$ is defined by (B.4), $A_{i,i+1} = \sigma_i^2$ for $i \in \{1, 2, 3\}$, and the $A_{i,j}$ satisfy the ‘surface relations’ (B.8) (the relations are not complete). For the convenience of the reader, we write out these relations in full:

$$A_{1,2}A_{1,3}A_{1,4} = 1 \quad (3.15)$$

$$A_{1,2}A_{2,3}A_{2,4} = 1 \quad (3.16)$$

$$A_{1,3}A_{2,3}A_{3,4} = 1 \quad (3.17)$$

$$A_{1,4}A_{2,4}A_{3,4} = 1. \quad (3.18)$$

Using (B.3) and (B.4), one may also see that:

$$A_{1,2}A_{1,3}A_{1,4}A_{2,3}A_{2,4}A_{3,4} = \Delta_4^2. \quad (3.19)$$

The reader may also convince himself or herself of the validity of this relation by drawing a picture similar to that of Figure B.2(b). It follows from relations (3.15), (3.18) and (3.19) that

$$A_{2,3} = \Delta_4^2 A_{3,4}^{-1} A_{2,4}^{-1} = \Delta_4^2 A_{1,4}, \quad (3.20)$$

from relations (3.17), (3.18) and (3.20) that

$$A_{1,3} = A_{3,4}^{-1} A_{2,3}^{-1} = A_{1,4} A_{2,4} A_{1,4}^{-1} \Delta_4^2, \quad (3.21)$$

and from relations (3.16) and (3.20) that

$$A_{1,2} = A_{2,4}^{-1} A_{2,3}^{-1} = A_{2,4}^{-1} A_{1,4}^{-1} \Delta_4^2. \quad (3.22)$$

If $i \in \{1, 2\}$, it follows from the braid relations in $B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)$ that $\sigma_i \sigma_{i+1} \sigma_i^{-1} = \sigma_{i+1}^{-1} \sigma_i \sigma_{i+1}$, and hence $\sigma_i \sigma_{i+1}^k \sigma_i^{-1} = \sigma_{i+1}^{-1} \sigma_i^k \sigma_{i+1}$ for all $k \in \mathbb{Z}$. We thus obtain:

$$\begin{aligned} z^3 &= (\sigma_2^7 \sigma_1)^3 = A_{2,3}^3 \sigma_2 \sigma_1 \sigma_2^7 \sigma_1^{-1} \cdot \sigma_1^2 \sigma_2^7 \sigma_1 = A_{2,3}^3 \sigma_1^7 \sigma_2 \sigma_1^2 \sigma_2^7 \sigma_1 \\ &= A_{2,3}^3 A_{1,2}^3 \sigma_1 \sigma_2 \sigma_1^2 \sigma_2^7 \sigma_1 = A_{2,3}^3 A_{1,2}^3 \sigma_1 \cdot \sigma_2 \sigma_1^2 \sigma_2^{-1} \cdot \sigma_2^8 \sigma_1 \\ &= A_{2,3}^3 A_{1,2}^3 A_{2,3} \sigma_1 \sigma_2^8 \sigma_1 = A_{2,3}^3 A_{1,2}^3 A_{2,3} A_{1,2} \sigma_1^{-1} \sigma_2^8 \sigma_1 \\ &= A_{2,3}^3 A_{1,2}^3 A_{2,3} A_{1,2} \sigma_2 \sigma_1^8 \sigma_2^{-1} = A_{2,3}^3 A_{1,2}^3 A_{2,3} A_{1,2} A_{1,3}^4 \\ &= (\Delta_4^2 A_{1,4})^3 (A_{2,4}^{-1} A_{1,4}^{-1} \Delta_4^2)^3 \Delta_4^2 A_{1,4} A_{2,4}^{-1} A_{1,4}^{-1} \Delta_4^2 (A_{1,4} A_{2,4} A_{1,4}^{-1} \Delta_4^2)^4 \\ &= A_{1,4}^3 A_{2,4}^{-1} A_{1,4}^{-1} A_{2,4}^{-1} A_{1,4}^{-1} A_{2,4}^2 A_{1,4}^{-1} \end{aligned}$$

by equations (3.20) – (3.22). But $(A_{1,4}, A_{2,4})$ is a basis of the free group $\pi_1(\mathbb{S}^2 \setminus \{z_1, z_2, z_3\}, z_4)$, so $z^3 \neq 1$, and since $z^3 \in \langle A_{1,4}, A_{2,4} \rangle$, it is of infinite order. We conclude that $L \cong \mathcal{Q}_8 \rtimes_3 \mathbb{Z}$, which completes the proof in this case.

(c) The existence of subgroups of $B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)$ isomorphic to $\mathcal{Q}_{16} *_{\mathcal{Q}_8} \mathcal{Q}_{16}$ that are non maximal as virtually cyclic subgroups is actually a consequence of the structure of the amalgamated product. Indeed, consider the following short exact sequence:

$$1 \longrightarrow \mathcal{Q}_8 \longrightarrow \mathcal{Q}_{16} *_{\mathcal{Q}_8} \mathcal{Q}_{16} \xrightarrow{p} \mathbb{Z}_2 * \mathbb{Z}_2 \longrightarrow 1.$$

Now $\mathbb{Z}_2 * \mathbb{Z}_2$ is isomorphic to the infinite dihedral group $\text{Dih}_\infty = \mathbb{Z} \rtimes \mathbb{Z}_2$. So for all $n \in \mathbb{N}$, $n \geq 2$, the subgroup $n\mathbb{Z} \rtimes \mathbb{Z}_2$ is abstractly isomorphic to $\mathbb{Z} \rtimes \mathbb{Z}_2$ while being a proper subgroup (in other words, it is non co-Hopfian). Thus $p^{-1}(n\mathbb{Z} \rtimes \mathbb{Z})$ is isomorphic to $\mathcal{Q}_{16} *_{\mathcal{Q}_8} \mathcal{Q}_{16}$ while being a proper subgroup (of index n). In particular, since $B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)$ contains a subgroup Γ that is isomorphic to $\mathcal{Q}_{16} *_{\mathcal{Q}_8} \mathcal{Q}_{16}$, Γ admits proper subgroups that are also isomorphic to $\mathcal{Q}_{16} *_{\mathcal{Q}_8} \mathcal{Q}_{16}$, and any one of these subgroups is a non-maximal virtually cyclic subgroup that is isomorphic to $\mathcal{Q}_{16} *_{\mathcal{Q}_8} \mathcal{Q}_{16}$. Conversely, let G be a subgroup of $B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)$ that is isomorphic to $\mathcal{Q}_{16} *_{\mathcal{Q}_8} \mathcal{Q}_{16}$. By Proposition 42, G is contained in a subgroup M of $B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)$ that is maximal as a virtually cyclic subgroup. But Theorem 39 implies that the only isomorphism class of infinite virtually cyclic subgroups of $B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)$ that contains \mathcal{Q}_{16} is $\mathcal{Q}_{16} *_{\mathcal{Q}_8} \mathcal{Q}_{16}$, and so we conclude that $M \cong \mathcal{Q}_{16} *_{\mathcal{Q}_8} \mathcal{Q}_{16}$, which completes the proof. \square

This proves parts (c) and (d) of Theorem 41, with the exception of the statement of part (c) that pertains to the existence of maximal virtually cyclic subgroups in the case $j = 1$.

3.2.3 Proof of the existence of maximal subgroups $\mathcal{Q}_8 \times \mathbb{Z}$ in part (c) of Theorem 41

We now complete the proof of Theorem 41(c) by proving the existence of maximal virtually cyclic subgroups of $B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)$ that are isomorphic to $\mathcal{Q}_8 \times \mathbb{Z}$.

Proposition 46. *The group $B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)$ contains maximal virtually cyclic subgroups that are isomorphic to $\mathcal{Q}_8 \times \mathbb{Z}$.*

In order to prove Proposition 46, we will first require two lemmas. As before, let Q denote the normal subgroup $\langle \alpha_0^2, \Delta_4 \rangle$ of $B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)$, and let $H_1 = \langle \Delta_4 \rangle$, $H_2 = \langle \alpha_0^2 \rangle$ and $H_3 = \langle \alpha_0^2 \Delta_4 \rangle$ be the three subgroups of Q isomorphic to \mathbb{Z}_4 . Then $B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)$ acts transitively on the set $\mathcal{H} = \{H_1, H_2, H_3\}$ by conjugation, and this action gives rise to the permutation representation $\psi: B_4(\mathbb{S}^2) \longrightarrow S_3$ that satisfies the following relation:

$$\text{for all } 1 \leq i, j \leq 3, \text{ and for all } \beta \in B_4(\mathbb{S}^2), (\beta H_i \beta^{-1} = H_j) \iff (\psi(\beta)(i) = j).$$

Note that the homomorphism ψ is surjective, that $\psi(\sigma_1) = (1, 2)$ by equation (3.13), and that $\psi(\sigma_2) = (2, 3)$ by equation (3.14). Since $\sigma_1 \sigma_3^{-1} \in Q$ by equation (3.8), and the action of the elements of Q on \mathcal{H} is trivial, it follows that $\psi(\sigma_3) = \psi(\sigma_1)$. If β is of infinite order then $\langle Q \cup \{\beta\} \rangle \cong \mathcal{Q}_8 \times \mathbb{Z}$, and the order of the action of \mathbb{Z} on \mathcal{Q}_8 is that of the element $\psi(\beta)$. The first step is to describe $\text{Ker}(\psi)$ whose elements of infinite order will give rise to subgroups of $B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)$ isomorphic to $\mathcal{Q}_8 \times \mathbb{Z}$.

Lemma 47. *$\text{Ker}(\psi)$ is isomorphic to the direct product of Q with a free group $\mathbb{F}_2(x, y)$ of rank 2, for which a basis (x, y) is given by:*

$$x = \alpha_0^2 \Delta_4 \sigma_1^2 \text{ and } y = \Delta_4 \sigma_2^2. \quad (3.23)$$

Proof. By Remarks 36(b) and Proposition 37, $B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)$ is isomorphic to the group $T^* *_{\mathcal{Q}_8} \mathcal{Q}_{16}$, where the T^* -factor G_1 of $B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)$ is generated by Q and α_1^2 , and the \mathcal{Q}_{16} -factor G_2 of $B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)$ is generated by Q and α_0 , so $G_1 \cap G_2 = Q$. Consider the canonical projection:

$$\rho: B_4(\mathbb{S}^2) \longrightarrow B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)/Q.$$

As in the proof of Proposition 37, we identify the quotient $B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)/Q$ with the free product $\mathbb{Z}_3 * \mathbb{Z}_2$, the \mathbb{Z}_3 - (resp. \mathbb{Z}_2 -) factor being generated by $a = \rho(\alpha_1)$ (resp. $b = \rho(\alpha_0)$). Consider the surjective homomorphism $\hat{\psi}: \mathbb{Z}_3 * \mathbb{Z}_2 \longrightarrow S_3$ defined by $\hat{\psi}(a) = (1, 3, 2)$ and $\hat{\psi}(b) = (1, 3)$. Since $\psi(\alpha_0) = \psi(\sigma_1\sigma_2\sigma_3) = (1, 2)(2, 3)(1, 2) = (1, 3)$, $\psi(\alpha_1) = \psi(\sigma_1\sigma_2\sigma_3^2) = (1, 2)(2, 3) = (1, 3, 2)$ and $B_4(\mathbb{S}^2) = \langle \alpha_0, \alpha_1 \rangle$ by [41, Theorem 3], it follows that $\hat{\psi} \circ \rho = \psi$, so ρ induces a homomorphism $\hat{\rho}: \text{Ker}(\psi) \longrightarrow \text{Ker}(\hat{\psi})$ of the respective kernels. We thus obtain the following commutative diagram of short exact sequences:

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} & & 1 & & 1 & & \\ & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \\ & & \text{Ker}(\hat{\rho}) & \longrightarrow & Q & & \\ & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \\ 1 & \longrightarrow & \text{Ker}(\psi) & \longrightarrow & B_4(\mathbb{S}^2) & \xrightarrow{\psi} & S_3 \longrightarrow 1 \\ & & \downarrow \hat{\rho} & & \downarrow \rho & & \parallel \\ 1 & \longrightarrow & \text{Ker}(\hat{\psi}) & \longrightarrow & \mathbb{Z}_3 * \mathbb{Z}_2 & \xrightarrow{\hat{\psi}} & S_3 \longrightarrow 1, \\ & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \\ & & 1 & & 1 & & \end{array} \quad (3.24)$$

as well as the equality $\text{Ker}(\hat{\rho}) = Q$. Taking $\{1, a, a^2, b, ab, a^2b\}$ to be the Schreier transversal for $\hat{\psi}$ and applying the Reidemeister-Schreier rewriting process [53], we see that $\text{Ker}(\hat{\psi})$ is a free group of rank 2 with basis $((ab)^2, (ba)^2)$, which implies that $\text{Ker}(\psi) \cong \mathcal{Q}_8 \times \mathbb{F}_2$ by the commutative diagram (3.24). To determine the action of $\text{Ker}(\hat{\psi})$ on Q , note by (3.13) and (3.14) that σ_1^2 and σ_2^2 belong to $\text{Ker}(\psi)$, and that:

$$\begin{aligned} \rho(\sigma_1^2) &= \rho(\sigma_3^2) = (\rho(\alpha_0^{-1}\alpha_1))^2 = (ba)^2 \\ \rho(\sigma_2^2) &= \rho(\alpha_0\sigma_1^2\alpha_0^{-1}) = (ab)^2, \end{aligned}$$

so $\hat{\rho}(\sigma_1^2) = (ba)^2$ and $\hat{\rho}(\sigma_2^2) = (ab)^2$. The same equations imply that the actions by conjugation of σ_1^2 and σ_2^2 on Q yield elements of $\text{Inn}(Q)$, namely conjugation by $\alpha_0^2\Delta_4$ and by Δ_4 respectively. Let $s: \text{Ker}(\hat{\psi}) \longrightarrow \text{Ker}(\psi)$ be the section for $\hat{\rho}$ defined on the basis of $\text{Ker}(\hat{\psi})$ by $s((ba)^2) = x$ and $s((ab)^2) = y$. The action of these two elements on Q is thus trivial, which shows that $\text{Ker}(\psi) \cong \mathcal{Q}_8 \times \mathbb{F}_2$ as required. \square

Using the definition of ψ , a transversal of $\text{Ker}(\psi)$ in $B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)$ is seen to be:

$$\mathcal{T} = \{e, \sigma_1, \sigma_2, \sigma_1\sigma_2\sigma_1, \sigma_1\sigma_2, \sigma_2\sigma_1\}. \quad (3.25)$$

We now determine the action by conjugation of these coset representatives on x and y .

Lemma 48. Let $\tau \in \mathcal{T} \setminus \{e\}$. Then

$$\tau x \tau^{-1} = \begin{cases} x & \text{if } \tau = \sigma_1 \\ \Delta_4^2 x^{-1} y^{-1} & \text{if } \tau = \sigma_2 \\ \Delta_4^2 y & \text{if } \tau = \sigma_1 \sigma_2 \sigma_1 \\ \Delta_4^2 y & \text{if } \tau = \sigma_1 \sigma_2 \\ \Delta_4^2 x^{-1} y^{-1} & \text{if } \tau = \sigma_2 \sigma_1 \end{cases} \text{ and } \tau y \tau^{-1} = \begin{cases} y^{-1} x^{-1} & \text{if } \tau = \sigma_1 \\ y & \text{if } \tau = \sigma_2 \\ \Delta_4^2 x & \text{if } \tau = \sigma_1 \sigma_2 \sigma_1 \\ y^{-1} x^{-1} & \text{if } \tau = \sigma_1 \sigma_2 \\ \Delta_4^2 x & \text{if } \tau = \sigma_2 \sigma_1. \end{cases}$$

Proof. The action by conjugation of σ_1 and σ_2 on σ_1^2 and σ_2^2 is given by:

$$\begin{aligned} \sigma_1 \sigma_1^2 \sigma_1^{-1} &= \sigma_1^2 \text{ and } \sigma_2 \sigma_2^2 \sigma_2^{-1} = \sigma_2^2 \\ \sigma_1 \sigma_2^2 \sigma_1^{-1} &= \sigma_2^{-1} \sigma_1^2 \sigma_2 = \sigma_2^{-2} \cdot \sigma_2 \sigma_1^2 \sigma_2 = \sigma_2^{-2} \sigma_3^{-2} \text{ by equation (3.1)} \\ &= \sigma_2^{-2} \alpha_0^2 \sigma_1^{-2} \alpha_0^{-2} \text{ by equation (3.5)} \\ &= \sigma_2^{-2} \sigma_1^{-2} \cdot \sigma_1^2 \alpha_0^2 \sigma_1^{-2} \alpha_0^{-2} = \Delta_4^2 \sigma_2^{-2} \sigma_1^{-2} \text{ by equations (3.7) and (3.13)} \\ \sigma_2 \sigma_1^2 \sigma_2^{-1} &= \sigma_2 \sigma_1^2 \sigma_2^{-1} = \sigma_2 \sigma_1^2 \sigma_2 \cdot \sigma_2^{-2} = \Delta_4^2 \sigma_1^{-2} \sigma_2^{-2} \text{ in a similar manner.} \end{aligned}$$

Using also equations (3.13) and (3.14) as well as the fact that x and y commute with the elements of Q , we see that:

$$\begin{aligned} \sigma_1 x \sigma_1^{-1} &= \sigma_1 \alpha_0^2 \Delta_4 \sigma_1^2 \sigma_1^{-1} = \alpha_0^2 \Delta_4 \sigma_1^2 = x \\ \sigma_1 y \sigma_1^{-1} &= \sigma_1 \Delta_4 \sigma_2^2 \sigma_1^{-1} = \alpha_0^2 \Delta_4^2 \sigma_2^{-2} \sigma_1^{-2} = \alpha_0^2 \Delta_4^2 y^{-1} \Delta_4 x^{-1} \alpha_0^2 \Delta_4 = y^{-1} x^{-1} \\ \sigma_2 x \sigma_2^{-1} &= \sigma_2 \alpha_0^2 \Delta_4 \sigma_1^2 \sigma_2^{-1} = \alpha_0^2 \Delta_4^2 \sigma_1^{-2} \sigma_2^{-2} = \alpha_0^2 \Delta_4^2 x^{-1} \alpha_0^2 \Delta_4 y^{-1} \Delta_4 = \Delta_4^2 x^{-1} y^{-1} \\ \sigma_2 y \sigma_2^{-1} &= \sigma_2 \Delta_4 \sigma_2^2 \sigma_2^{-1} = \alpha_0^2 \Delta_4^2 \sigma_2^{-2} \sigma_1^{-2} = \Delta_4^2 \sigma_2^{-2} = y, \end{aligned}$$

from which we deduce that:

$$\begin{aligned} (\sigma_1 \sigma_2 \sigma_1) x (\sigma_1 \sigma_2 \sigma_1)^{-1} &= \Delta_4^2 y, & (\sigma_1 \sigma_2) x \sigma_2^{-1} \sigma_1^{-1} &= \Delta_4^2 y, \\ (\sigma_1 \sigma_2 \sigma_1) y (\sigma_1 \sigma_2 \sigma_1)^{-1} &= \Delta_4^2 x, & (\sigma_1 \sigma_2) y \sigma_2^{-1} \sigma_1^{-1} &= y^{-1} x^{-1}, \\ (\sigma_2 \sigma_1) x \sigma_1^{-1} \sigma_2^{-1} &= \Delta_4^2 x^{-1} y^{-1}, & (\sigma_2 \sigma_1) y \sigma_1^{-1} \sigma_2^{-1} &= \Delta_4^2 x. \end{aligned}$$

We thus obtain the relations given in the statement. \square

Proof of Proposition 46. To prove the proposition, we must show that there exists a maximal virtually cyclic subgroup of $B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)$ that is isomorphic to $\mathcal{Q}_8 \times \mathbb{Z}$. Let $z \in B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)$ be an element of infinite order, and suppose that $\Gamma = \langle Q \cup \{z\} \rangle \cong \mathcal{Q}_8 \rtimes_j \mathbb{Z}$, where $j \in \{2, 3\}$. Our aim is to obtain necessary conditions on the generators of the infinite cyclic factor of those subgroups of Γ that are isomorphic to $\mathcal{Q}_8 \times \mathbb{Z}$. This will enable us to construct subgroups of $B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)$ that are isomorphic to $\mathcal{Q}_8 \times \mathbb{Z}$ but are not contained in any subgroup isomorphic to $\mathcal{Q}_8 \rtimes_j \mathbb{Z}$, where $j \in \{2, 3\}$. With this in mind, let Δ be a subgroup of Γ that is isomorphic to $\mathcal{Q}_8 \times \mathbb{Z}$. Since the finite-order elements of Γ are precisely the elements of Q , the subgroup of Δ that is isomorphic to \mathcal{Q}_8 is Q . The remaining elements of Γ , of the form $q \cdot z^k$, where $q \in Q$ and $k \in \mathbb{Z} \setminus \{0\}$, are of infinite order. In order that such an element belong to the centraliser of Q (and thus form a subgroup isomorphic to $\mathcal{Q}_8 \times \mathbb{Z}$), the fact that the action of z on Q is of

order j implies that k must be a multiple of j , and thus $\Delta = \langle Q \cup \{q \cdot z^{\lambda j}\} \rangle = \langle Q \cup \{z^{\lambda j}\} \rangle \subset \langle Q \cup \{z^j\} \rangle$ for some $\lambda \in \mathbb{Z} \setminus \{0\}$. In particular, $\langle Q \cup \{z^j\} \rangle$ is the maximal subgroup of Γ that is isomorphic to $Q_8 \times \mathbb{Z}$.

Since the action by conjugation of z on Q is of order j , it follows from the definition of ψ that z belongs to one of the cosets $\tau \cdot \text{Ker}(\psi)$ of $B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)$ where $\tau \in \mathcal{T} \setminus \{e\}$, \mathcal{T} being the transversal of equation (3.25). More precisely, $z \in \tau \cdot \text{Ker}(\psi)$, where $\tau \in \{\sigma_1, \sigma_2, \sigma_1\sigma_2\sigma_1\}$ if $j = 2$, and $\tau \in \{\sigma_1\sigma_2, \sigma_2\sigma_1\}$ if $j = 3$. Further, by Lemma 47 there exist $v \in \text{Ker}(\psi)$, $u \in \mathbb{F}_2(x, y)$ and $q_1 \in Q$ such that $z = \tau v$ and $v = q_1 u$. Let us write $u = u(x, y)$ as a freely reduced word in $\mathbb{F}_2(x, y)$:

$$u = x^{\varepsilon_1} y^{\delta_1} \dots x^{\varepsilon_r} y^{\delta_r},$$

where $\varepsilon_i, \delta_i \in \mathbb{Z}$ for all $i = 1, \dots, r$, and $\delta_1, \varepsilon_2, \dots, \delta_{r-1}, \varepsilon_r$ are non-zero. If $v \in \text{Ker}(\psi)$, let \bar{v} denote the image of v under projection onto the $\mathbb{F}_2(x, y)$ -factor, followed by Abelianisation of $\mathbb{F}_2(x, y)$. We now compute \bar{z}^j . We have that:

$$\begin{aligned} z^j &= (\tau q_1 u)^j \\ &= \begin{cases} \underbrace{\tau q_1 \tau^{-1}}_{\in Q} \underbrace{\tau u \tau q_1 \tau^{-1} u^{-1} \tau^{-1} (\tau u)^2}_{\in Q} & \text{if } j = 2 \\ \underbrace{\tau q_1 \tau^{-1}}_{\in Q} \underbrace{\tau u \tau q_1 \tau^{-1} u^{-1} \tau^{-1}}_{\in Q} \underbrace{\tau u \tau u \tau q_1 \tau^{-1} u^{-1} \tau^{-1} u^{-1} \tau^{-1} (\tau u)^3}_{\in Q} & \text{if } j = 3 \end{cases} \\ &= q'(\tau u)^j, \quad \text{where } q' \in Q. \end{aligned}$$

Now

$$(\tau u)^j = \begin{cases} \tau u \tau^{-1} \cdot \tau^2 \cdot u & \text{if } j = 2 \\ (\tau u \tau^{-1})(\tau^2 u \tau^{-2}) \cdot \tau^3 \cdot u & \text{if } j = 3. \end{cases}$$

Applying Lemma 48, and using equation (3.23) as well as the fact that x and y commute with the elements of Q , it follows that there exists $q'' \in Q$ such that $(\tau u)^j = q'^{-1} q'' w$, where $w \in \mathbb{F}_2(x, y)$ is given by:

$$\begin{cases} x^{\varepsilon_1} (y^{-1} x^{-1})^{\delta_1} \dots x^{\varepsilon_r} (y^{-1} x^{-1})^{\delta_r} x x^{\varepsilon_1} y^{\delta_1} \dots x^{\varepsilon_r} y^{\delta_r} & \text{if } \tau = \sigma_1 \\ (x^{-1} y^{-1})^{\varepsilon_1} y^{\delta_1} \dots (x^{-1} y^{-1})^{\varepsilon_r} y^{\delta_r} y x^{\varepsilon_1} y^{\delta_1} \dots x^{\varepsilon_r} y^{\delta_r} & \text{if } \tau = \sigma_2 \\ y^{\varepsilon_1} x^{\delta_1} \dots y^{\varepsilon_r} x^{\delta_r} x^{\varepsilon_1} y^{\delta_1} \dots x^{\varepsilon_r} y^{\delta_r} & \text{if } \tau = \sigma_1 \sigma_2 \sigma_1 \\ y^{\varepsilon_1} (y^{-1} x^{-1})^{\delta_1} \dots y^{\varepsilon_r} (y^{-1} x^{-1})^{\delta_r} (y^{-1} x^{-1})^{\varepsilon_1} x^{\delta_1} \dots (y^{-1} x^{-1})^{\varepsilon_r} x^{\delta_r} x^{\varepsilon_1} y^{\delta_1} \dots x^{\varepsilon_r} y^{\delta_r} & \text{if } \tau = \sigma_1 \sigma_2 \\ (x^{-1} y^{-1})^{\varepsilon_1} x^{\delta_1} \dots (x^{-1} y^{-1})^{\varepsilon_r} x^{\delta_r} y^{\varepsilon_1} (x^{-1} y^{-1})^{\delta_1} \dots y^{\varepsilon_r} (x^{-1} y^{-1})^{\delta_r} x^{\varepsilon_1} y^{\delta_1} \dots x^{\varepsilon_r} y^{\delta_r} & \text{if } \tau = \sigma_2 \sigma_1. \end{cases}$$

We have also used the fact that:

$$(\sigma_1 \sigma_2 \sigma_1)^2 = (\sigma_1 \sigma_2)^3 = (\sigma_2 \sigma_1)^3 = (\sigma_1 \sigma_3^{-1})^2 = \Delta_4^2$$

by equations (3.1), (3.7) and (3.8). Since $z^j = q'' w$, and q'' commutes with w , relative to the basis (\bar{x}, \bar{y}) of the Abelianisation \mathbb{Z}^2 of $\mathbb{F}_2(x, y)$, we obtain:

$$\bar{z}^{\lambda j} = \begin{cases} \lambda \cdot (2(\varepsilon_1 + \dots + \varepsilon_r) - (\delta_1 + \dots + \delta_r) + 1, 0) & \text{if } \tau = \sigma_1 \\ \lambda \cdot (0, 2(\delta_1 + \dots + \delta_r) - (\varepsilon_1 + \dots + \varepsilon_r) + 1) & \text{if } \tau = \sigma_2 \\ \lambda(\varepsilon_1 + \dots + \varepsilon_r + \delta_1 + \dots + \delta_r) \cdot (1, 1) & \text{if } \tau = \sigma_1 \sigma_2 \sigma_1 \\ (0, 0) & \text{if } \tau = \sigma_1 \sigma_2 \text{ or } \tau = \sigma_2 \sigma_1, \end{cases}$$

for all $\lambda \in \mathbb{Z} \setminus \{0\}$. We conclude that if Δ is a subgroup of $\Gamma = \langle Q \cup \{z\} \rangle \cong \mathcal{Q}_8 \rtimes_j \mathbb{Z}$ that is isomorphic to $\mathcal{Q}_8 \times \mathbb{Z}$ then $\Delta = \langle Q \cup \{q \cdot z^{\lambda j}\} \rangle$, where $\overline{z^{\lambda j}} \in \{(a, b) \in \mathbb{Z}^2 \mid ab(a - b) = 0\}$ relative to the basis (\bar{x}, \bar{y}) of the Abelianisation \mathbb{Z}^2 of $\mathbb{F}_2(x, y)$.

To complete the proof of the proposition, we shall exhibit an element $w \in B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)$ for which:

- (a) w is a non-trivial element of $\mathbb{F}_2(x, y)$ such that $\overline{w} = (c, d)$, where $cd(c - d) \neq 0$.
- (b) $\pi(w) \notin \langle \overline{3} \rangle$.

Since $\mathbb{F}_2(x, y) \subset \text{Ker}(\psi)$, the first condition implies that such an element w is a suitable generator of the \mathbb{Z} -factor of a subgroup of $B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)$ that is isomorphic to $\mathcal{Q}_8 \times \mathbb{Z}$, but which from the above discussion, is not contained in any subgroup that is isomorphic to $\mathcal{Q}_8 \rtimes_j \mathbb{Z}$ for $j \in \{2, 3\}$. By Lemma 44(b), the second condition implies that $\langle Q \cup \{w\} \rangle$ is not contained in any subgroup of $B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)$ that is isomorphic to $\mathcal{Q}_{16} *_{\mathcal{Q}_8} \mathcal{Q}_{16}$, $\mathcal{Q}_8 *_{\mathbb{Z}_4} \mathcal{Q}_8$, $\mathbb{Z}_8 *_{\mathbb{Z}_4} \mathbb{Z}_8$ or $\mathcal{Q}_8 *_{\mathbb{Z}_4} \mathbb{Z}_8$.

Take $w = xy^3$, and let $\Delta = \langle Q \cup \{w\} \rangle$. Then $\Delta \cong \mathcal{Q}_8 \times \mathbb{Z}$ since $w \in \text{Ker}(\psi)$ is an element of infinite order, and by Proposition 42, there exists a maximal infinite virtually cyclic subgroup M of $B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)$ that contains Δ . Clearly condition (a) above holds, and equation (3.23) implies that condition (b) is also satisfied. It follows from the previous paragraph and Theorem 39(b) that $M \cong \mathcal{Q}_8 \times \mathbb{Z}$, which completes the proof of Proposition 46. In conjunction with Proposition 45, this also proves parts (c) and (d) of Theorem 41. \square

This proves part (c) of Theorem 41 in the exceptional case, and bringing together Propositions 43, 45 and 46, completes the proof of Theorem 41.

3.3 Conjugacy classes of maximal infinite virtually cyclic subgroups in $B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)$

In order to determine the number of conjugacy classes of maximal infinite virtually cyclic subgroups, we follow the procedure given in [54, Section 2.5] based on the action of $B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)$ on a suitable tree. As in the proof of Proposition 37, we identify $B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)$ with $\mathcal{Q}_{16} *_{\mathcal{Q}_8} T^*$, and the quotient $B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)/Q$ with the modular group $\text{PSL}(2, \mathbb{Z}) \cong \mathbb{Z}_2 * \mathbb{Z}_3 = \langle a, b \mid a^2 = b^3 = 1 \rangle$. Thus we have the following short exact sequence:

$$1 \longrightarrow Q \longrightarrow B_4(\mathbb{S}^2) \xrightarrow{\rho} \mathbb{Z}_2 * \mathbb{Z}_3 \longrightarrow 1, \quad (3.26)$$

ρ being the quotient map as in the proof of Proposition 37. There is a well-known action of $\text{PSL}(2, \mathbb{Z})$ on the tree T of Figure 3.1, where the edge stabilisers are trivial and the vertex stabilisers are \mathbb{Z}_2 and \mathbb{Z}_3 . The quotient of T by this action is the graph:

$$\mathbb{Z}_2 \bullet \text{---} \bullet \mathbb{Z}_3.$$

It follows from the short exact sequence (3.26) that $B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)$ acts on T via ρ , and since $\text{Ker}(\rho) \cong \mathcal{Q}_8$, the quotient graph of this action is:

$$\mathcal{Q}_{16} \bullet \text{---} \bullet T^*.$$

\mathcal{Q}_8

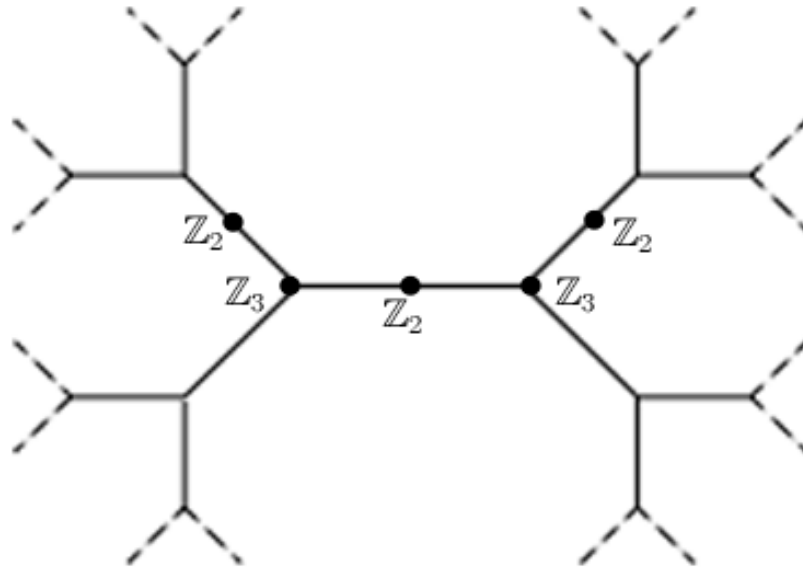


Figure 3.1: The tree T , showing the edge and vertex stabilisers under the action of $\mathrm{PSL}(2, \mathbb{Z})$.

We now apply the Reidemeister-Schreier rewriting process to the Abelianisation homomorphism $\tilde{\pi}: \mathbb{Z}_2 * \mathbb{Z}_3 \longrightarrow \mathbb{Z}_6$. A computation similar to that given in the proof of Lemma 47 shows that the commutator subgroup $\Gamma_2(\mathbb{Z}_2 * \mathbb{Z}_3)$ of $\mathbb{Z}_2 * \mathbb{Z}_3$ is a free group, which we denote by \mathbf{F}_2 , of rank two with basis $([a, b], [a, b^2])$.

Proposition 49. *Let $\tilde{\mathbf{F}} = \rho^{-1}(\mathbf{F}_2)$. Then there exists a (free) subgroup $\tilde{\mathbf{F}}_k$ of $\tilde{\mathbf{F}}$ of rank $k \geq 2$ that is normal and of finite index in $B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)$.*

Remark 50. The above construction gives rise to the following commutative diagram of short exact sequences:

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc}
 & & 1 & & 1 & & \\
 & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \\
 1 & \longrightarrow & Q & \longrightarrow & \tilde{\mathbf{F}} & \xrightarrow{\rho|_{\tilde{\mathbf{F}}}} & \mathbf{F}_2 \longrightarrow 1 \\
 & & \parallel & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\
 1 & \longrightarrow & Q & \longrightarrow & B_4(\mathbb{S}^2) & \xrightarrow{\rho} & \mathbb{Z}_2 * \mathbb{Z}_3 \longrightarrow 1. \\
 & & & & \downarrow \pi & & \downarrow \tilde{\pi} \\
 & & & & \mathbb{Z}_6 & \xlongequal{\quad} & \mathbb{Z}_6 \\
 & & & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\
 & & & & 1 & & 1
 \end{array}$$

We see that $\Gamma_2(B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)) = \tilde{\mathbf{F}} \cong Q_8 \rtimes \mathbf{F}_2$, which yields an alternative proof of the decomposition given in [44, Theorem 1.3(3)].

Proof of Proposition 49. By Remark 50, $\tilde{\mathbf{F}}$ is isomorphic to a semi-direct product of the form $\mathcal{Q}_8 \rtimes \mathbf{F}_2$. Let $s: \mathbf{F}_2 \rightarrow \tilde{\mathbf{F}}$ be a section for $\rho|_{\tilde{\mathbf{F}}}$. Since $s(\mathbf{F}_2)$ is of finite index in $B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)$, it suffices to take $\tilde{\mathbf{F}}_k$ to be the intersection of the conjugates of $s(\mathbf{F}_2)$ in $B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)$. \square

The group \mathbf{F}_2 acts freely on T , the resulting quotient space being a graph Γ_1 that is homotopy equivalent to a wedge of two circles. The group $\tilde{\mathbf{F}}_k$ also acts freely on T in the same way as its image $\rho(\tilde{\mathbf{F}}_k)$ in $\mathbb{Z}_2 * \mathbb{Z}_3$, the quotient graph $\Gamma = T/\tilde{\mathbf{F}}_k$ being a finite-sheeted covering space of Γ_1 .

By [54, Section 2.3], there is a bijective correspondence between:

- (a) the maximal infinite virtually subgroups of $B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)$, and
- (b) the stabilisers of geodesics in T with infinite stabiliser.

In order to determine the number of conjugacy classes of the maximal infinite virtually cyclic subgroups of $B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)$, we observe that since the action of \mathcal{Q}_8 on the quotient $T/\tilde{\mathbf{F}}_k$ is trivial, it follows that $\pi_1((T/\tilde{\mathbf{F}}_k)^{\mathcal{Q}_8})$ is free of rank $k \geq 2$. Therefore, there are infinitely many conjugacy classes of maximal infinite virtually cyclic subgroups of the form $\mathcal{Q}_8 \times_j \mathbb{Z}$ for $j \in \{1, 2, 3\}$ and of the form $\mathcal{Q}_{16} *_{\mathcal{Q}_8} \mathcal{Q}_{16}$, see [54, Section 2.5] for more details.

Chapter 4

Lower algebraic K -theory groups of the group ring $\mathbb{Z}[B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)]$

As we mentioned in Section 2.1, $B_n(\mathbb{S}^2)$ is finite for all $n \leq 3$. For these values of n , the corresponding K -groups were given in Table 2.1. This chapter is devoted to the computation of the lower K -groups of $\mathbb{Z}[B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)]$. The aim is to prove Theorem 1, whose statement we recall here.

Theorem 1. *The group $B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)$ has the following lower algebraic K -groups:*

$$\begin{aligned} \mathrm{Wh}(B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)) &\cong \mathbb{Z} \oplus \mathrm{Nil}_1, \\ \tilde{K}_0(\mathbb{Z}[B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)]) &\cong \mathbb{Z}_2 \oplus \mathrm{Nil}_0, \quad \text{and} \\ K_{-1}(\mathbb{Z}[B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)]) &\cong \mathbb{Z}_2 \oplus \mathbb{Z}, \\ K_{-i}(\mathbb{Z}[B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)]) &= 0 \text{ for all } i \geq 2, \end{aligned}$$

where for $i = 0, 1$, the groups Nil_i are isomorphic to a countably-infinite direct sum of \mathbb{Z}_2 , \mathbb{Z}_4 or $\mathbb{Z}_2 \oplus \mathbb{Z}_4$.

The main fact that allows this computation is that $B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)$ is hyperbolic in the sense of Gromov (see Remark 38) because it is an amalgam of finite groups by Proposition 37. Hence the Farrell-Jones fibred isomorphism conjecture holds for this group, and so we may perform the K -theoretical calculations using Section 4.1 and [54, 55]. All of these calculations are based on the knowledge of the lower K -theory groups of the virtually cyclic subgroups of $B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)$. In Section 4.1, we recall some general facts about the lower K -groups of infinite virtually cyclic groups. In Section 4.2, we discuss the lower K -groups of the finite subgroups of $B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)$ and how they fit together with the infinite virtually cyclic subgroups of $B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)$ to give the lower K -groups of $\mathbb{Z}[B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)]$, up to computing the Nil_i groups. Finally, in Section 4.3, we determine these groups, and we put together all of these ingredients to complete our calculations to prove Theorem 1.

4.1 The lower K -theory of infinite virtually cyclic groups

In this section, we provide the ingredients needed to compute the lower algebraic K -groups of infinite virtually cyclic groups. For a virtually cyclic group Γ of Type I, the algebraic K -

groups of $\mathbb{Z}[\Gamma]$ are described by the Bass-Heller-Swan formula with $\alpha = 1$, which asserts that for a finite group π , there is a natural decomposition [6]:

$$K_i(\mathbb{Z}[\pi \times \mathbb{Z}]) = K_i(\mathbb{Z}[\pi]) \oplus K_{i-1}(\mathbb{Z}[\pi]) \oplus 2NK_i(\mathbb{Z}[\pi]) \quad \text{for all } i \in \mathbb{Z}, \quad (4.1)$$

where the i^{th} Bass Nil group of π , denoted by $NK_i(\mathbb{Z}[\pi])$, is defined to be the kernel of the homomorphism in K -groups induced by the evaluation $e: \mathbb{Z}[\pi][t] \rightarrow \mathbb{Z}[\pi]$ at $t = 0$. In the reduced version, equation (4.1) takes the form:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Wh}(\pi \times \mathbb{Z}) &= \text{Wh}(\pi) \oplus \tilde{K}_0(\mathbb{Z}[\pi]) \oplus 2NK_1(\mathbb{Z}[\pi]), \quad \text{and} \\ \tilde{K}_0(\mathbb{Z}[\pi \times \mathbb{Z}]) &= \tilde{K}_0(\mathbb{Z}[\pi]) \oplus K_{-1}(\mathbb{Z}[\pi]) \oplus 2NK_0(\mathbb{Z}[\pi]). \end{aligned}$$

If $\alpha \neq 1$, the group ring $\mathbb{Z}[\Gamma]$ is equal to $\mathbb{Z}[F \rtimes_{\alpha} \mathbb{Z}] \cong \mathbb{Z}[F]_{\alpha}[t, t^{-1}]$, the latter being the twisted Laurent polynomial ring of $\mathbb{Z}[F]$, and the twisting is given by the action of α . In this case, the Bass Nil groups are replaced by the Farrell-Hsiang Nil groups $NK_i(\mathbb{Z}[F], \alpha) \oplus NK_i(\mathbb{Z}[F], \alpha^{-1})$ [32].

For virtually cyclic groups Γ of Type II, the fundamental work of Waldhausen gives rise to the following exact sequence [77]:

$$\begin{aligned} \cdots \longrightarrow K_n(\mathbb{Z}[F]) \longrightarrow K_n(\mathbb{Z}[G_1]) \oplus K_n(\mathbb{Z}[G_2]) \longrightarrow K_n(\mathbb{Z}[\Gamma]) / \mathbf{Nil}_n^W \longrightarrow \\ K_{n-1}(\mathbb{Z}[F]) \longrightarrow K_{n-1}(\mathbb{Z}[G_1]) \oplus K_{n-1}(\mathbb{Z}[G_2]) \longrightarrow K_{n-1}(\mathbb{Z}[\Gamma]) / \mathbf{Nil}_{n-1}^W \longrightarrow \cdots, \end{aligned}$$

where \mathbf{Nil}_n^W denotes the Waldhausen Nil groups, denoted in [77] by:

$$\mathbf{Nil}_n^W = \mathbf{Nil}_n^W(\mathbb{Z}[F]; \mathbb{Z}[G_1 \setminus F], \mathbb{Z}[G_2 \setminus F]).$$

If Γ is an infinite virtually cyclic group of Type II, there is a surjection $f: \Gamma \rightarrow \text{Dih}_{\infty}$ whose kernel F is finite. Let T be the unique infinite cyclic subgroup of Dih_{∞} of index 2. Then the subgroup $\tilde{\Gamma} = f^{-1}(T) \subset \Gamma$ is an infinite virtually cyclic group of Type I, and $\tilde{\Gamma}$ is of the form $F \rtimes_{\alpha} T$. In this situation, it was recently established that the Waldhausen Nil groups may be identified with the Farrell-Hsiang Nil groups as follows [24, 62]:

$$\mathbf{Nil}_n^W = \mathbf{Nil}_n^W(\mathbb{Z}[F]; \mathbb{Z}[G_1 \setminus F], \mathbb{Z}[G_2 \setminus F]) \cong NK_n(\mathbb{Z}[F], \alpha) \cong NK_n(\mathbb{Z}[F], \alpha^{-1}).$$

In negative degrees, the Nil groups are described as follows.

Theorem 51 ([34, Theorem 2.1]). *Let Γ be an infinite virtually cyclic group. Then:*

- (a) $K_{-1}(\mathbb{Z}[\Gamma])$ is a finitely-generated Abelian group.
- (b) $K_{-1}(\mathbb{Z}[\Gamma])$ is generated by the images of $K_{-1}(\mathbb{Z}[F])$ under the maps induced by the inclusions $F \subset \Gamma$, where F runs over the representatives of the conjugacy classes of finite subgroups of Γ .
- (c) $K_{-i}(\mathbb{Z}[\Gamma]) = 0$ for all $i \geq 2$.

In summary, in order to compute the K -groups of an infinite virtually cyclic group, we need to understand the K -groups of the corresponding finite kernel F and of the associated Bass or Farrell-Hsiang Nil groups.

4.2 Preliminary K -theoretical calculations for $\mathbb{Z}[B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)]$

Using the hyperbolicity of $B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)$ and the results of [55] and [54, Example 3.2], we may compute $K_n(\mathbb{Z}[B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)])$, obtaining:

$$K_n(\mathbb{Z}[B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)]) \cong A_n \oplus B_n \oplus \left(\bigoplus_{V \in \mathcal{V}} \text{Coker}_n(V) \right),$$

where:

$$\begin{aligned} A_n &= \text{Coker}(K_n(\mathbb{Z}[\mathcal{Q}_8]) \longrightarrow K_n(\mathbb{Z}[\mathcal{Q}_{16}]) \oplus K_n(\mathbb{Z}[\mathbb{T}^*])) \text{ and} \\ B_n &= \text{Ker}(K_{n-1}(\mathbb{Z}[\mathcal{Q}_8]) \longrightarrow K_{n-1}(\mathbb{Z}[\mathcal{Q}_{16}]) \oplus K_{n-1}(\mathbb{Z}[\mathbb{T}^*])). \end{aligned}$$

The group $\text{Coker}_n(V)$ corresponds to the various Nil groups described in Section 4.1 (and will be determined in what follows), and the sum is over the family \mathcal{V} of conjugacy classes of maximal infinite virtually cyclic subgroups of $B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)$. Using the pseudo-isotopy functor instead of K , we obtain similar formulæ for the Whitehead and \tilde{K}_0 -groups:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Wh}(B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)) &= \begin{cases} \text{Coker}(\text{Wh}(\mathcal{Q}_8) \longrightarrow \text{Wh}(\mathcal{Q}_{16}) \oplus \text{Wh}(\mathbb{T}^*)) \\ \oplus \\ \text{Ker}(\tilde{K}_0(\mathbb{Z}[\mathcal{Q}_8]) \longrightarrow \tilde{K}_0(\mathbb{Z}[\mathcal{Q}_{16}]) \oplus \tilde{K}_0(\mathbb{Z}[\mathbb{T}^*])) \\ \oplus \\ \text{Nil}_1 \end{cases} \\ \tilde{K}_0(\mathbb{Z}[B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)]) &= \begin{cases} \text{Coker}(\tilde{K}_0(\mathbb{Z}[\mathcal{Q}_8]) \longrightarrow \tilde{K}_0(\mathbb{Z}[\mathcal{Q}_{16}]) \oplus \tilde{K}_0(\mathbb{Z}[\mathbb{T}^*])) \\ \oplus \\ \text{Ker}(\tilde{K}_{-1}(\mathbb{Z}[\mathcal{Q}_8]) \longrightarrow \tilde{K}_{-1}(\mathbb{Z}[\mathcal{Q}_{16}]) \oplus \tilde{K}_{-1}(\mathbb{Z}[\mathbb{T}^*])) \\ \oplus \\ \text{Nil}_0, \end{cases} \end{aligned}$$

and the K_{-1} -group is given by:

$$K_{-1}(\mathbb{Z}[B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)]) = \text{Coker}(K_{-1}(\mathbb{Z}[\mathcal{Q}_8]) \longrightarrow K_{-1}(\mathbb{Z}[\mathcal{Q}_{16}]) \oplus K_{-1}(\mathbb{Z}[\mathbb{T}^*])),$$

where for $i = 0, 1$, Nil_i splits as a direct sum of Bass or Farrell-Hsiang Nil groups over representatives of \mathcal{V} (see Section 4.1). From Theorem 31, we have the following isomorphisms:

$$\begin{array}{lll} \text{Wh}(\mathcal{Q}_8) = 0 & \tilde{K}_0(\mathbb{Z}[\mathcal{Q}_8]) \cong \mathbb{Z}_2 & K_{-1}(\mathbb{Z}[\mathcal{Q}_8]) = 0 \\ \text{Wh}(\mathcal{Q}_{16}) \cong \mathbb{Z} & \tilde{K}_0(\mathbb{Z}[\mathcal{Q}_{16}]) \cong \mathbb{Z}_2 & K_{-1}(\mathbb{Z}[\mathcal{Q}_{16}]) \cong \mathbb{Z}_2 \\ \text{Wh}(\mathbb{T}^*) = 0 & \tilde{K}_0(\mathbb{Z}[\mathbb{T}^*]) \cong \mathbb{Z}_2 & K_{-1}(\mathbb{Z}[\mathbb{T}^*]) \cong \mathbb{Z}. \end{array}$$

Moreover, by [73, Lemma 14.6], the induction $\tilde{K}_0(\mathbb{Z}[\mathcal{Q}_8]) \longrightarrow \tilde{K}_0(\mathbb{Z}[\mathcal{Q}_{16}])$ is zero and the homomorphism $\tilde{K}_0(\mathbb{Z}[\mathcal{Q}_8]) \longrightarrow \tilde{K}_0(\mathbb{Z}[\mathbb{T}^*])$ is an isomorphism by hyper-elementary induction

(cf. [73, Theorem 14.1(1)]). Furthermore, by Remark 32 and Theorem 51(c), we obtain the following isomorphisms:

$$\begin{cases} \text{Wh}(B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)) \cong \mathbb{Z} \oplus \text{Nil}_1 \\ \tilde{K}_0(\mathbb{Z}[B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)]) \cong \mathbb{Z}_2 \oplus \text{Nil}_0 \\ K_{-1}(\mathbb{Z}[B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)]) \cong \mathbb{Z}_2 \oplus \mathbb{Z} \\ K_{-i}(\mathbb{Z}[B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)]) \cong 0 \text{ for all } i \geq 2, \end{cases} \quad (4.2)$$

which proves Theorem 1 up to the computation of the Nil_i terms in the first two isomorphisms. To complete the proof, we must compute the Nil groups that appear in the contribution of the conjugacy classes of maximal infinite virtually cyclic subgroups of $B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)$.

4.3 Nil group computations

In this section, we compute the Bass Nil groups $NK_i(\mathbb{Z}[\mathcal{Q}_8])$ for $i = 0, 1$, as well as the twisted versions. In the non-twisted case, we obtain the following result.

Proposition 52. *For $i = 0, 1$, the groups $NK_i(\mathbb{Z}[\mathcal{Q}_8])$ are isomorphic to a countable, infinite direct sum of copies of \mathbb{Z}_2 , \mathbb{Z}_4 or $\mathbb{Z}_2 \oplus \mathbb{Z}_4$.*

In order to prove Proposition 52, we first consider the ring R of Lipschitz quaternions of the form $a + bi + cj + dk$, where $a, b, c, d \in \mathbb{Z}$ and i, j, k are the quaternionic roots of -1 , and compute its NK_0 and NK_1 groups. Recall that the ring S of Hurwitz quaternions consists of the quaternions of the form $(a + bi + cj + dk)/2$ where a, b, c and d are integers that are either all even or all odd. Hence:

$$R = \mathbb{Z}[i, j, k] \text{ and } S = \mathbb{Z}[i, j, k] + \mathbb{Z}\left[\frac{1+i+j+k}{2}\right].$$

By [17, Example 5.1], S is a non-commutative principal ideal domain, and so is a regular ring. Let $M = (1+i)S$. Observe that $M \subset R \subset S$, and that R/M and S/M are the fields of two and four elements respectively. From this, it follows that S/R is the group with 2 elements. These computations involve the double relative term $K_1(R, S, M)$ for the injection $R \rightarrow S$ and ideal $M = (1+i)S$ that is described as follows [37, Theorem 0.2]:

$$K_1(R, S, M) \cong (S/R) \otimes (M/M^2) / \{b \otimes cz + c \otimes zb - bc \otimes z \mid b, c \in S, z \in M\}. \quad (4.3)$$

A straightforward computation yields:

$$\begin{aligned} M &= \{a + bi + cj + dk \mid a + b \text{ and } c + d \text{ even}\} + \mathbb{Z}[i + k] \\ M^2 &= \{-2b + 2ai + 2dj + 2ck \mid a + b \text{ and } c + d \text{ even}\} + 2\mathbb{Z}[i + j]. \end{aligned}$$

Define the elements $b \in S/R$ and $u, w, z \in M/M^2$ to be the following cosets:

$$b = \overline{\frac{1+i+j+k}{2}}, u = \overline{1+i}, w = \overline{j+k}, \text{ and } z = \overline{1+i+j+k}.$$

Notice that the group generated by u and w is isomorphic to $\mathbb{Z}_2 \oplus \mathbb{Z}_2$. On the other hand, b is the only non-trivial element of S/R , $b^2 = b$ and the relations in (4.3) become:

$$b \otimes z = 0.$$

These identities imply that $K_1(R, S, M) = 0$, and so by [81, Lemma 2.1], we obtain:

$$0 = NK_1(R, S, M) \cong K_1(R, S, M) \otimes x\mathbb{Z}[x]. \quad (4.4)$$

Theorem 53. *The groups $NK_0(R)$ and $NK_1(R)$ are trivial.*

Proof. As mentioned above, R/M and S/M are the fields of two and four elements respectively. Consider the following commutative square, where the right-hand vertical morphism is surjective:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} R & \longrightarrow & S \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ R/M & \longrightarrow & S/M. \end{array}$$

Now R/M , S/M and S are all regular rings, so their corresponding Nil groups vanish, and it follows from the associated Mayer-Vietoris sequence that $NK_0(R) = 0$. On the other hand, using the fact that $0 = NK_1(R/M) = NK_1(S/M) = NK_1(S)$ and the description of the double relative group $K_1(R, S, M)$ given in [37, Theorem 1.1], we obtain the isomorphism:

$$NK_1(R, S, M) \cong NK_1(R).$$

It follows from this that $NK_1(R)$ is trivial by (4.4). This completes the proof of the theorem. \square

To prove Proposition 52, we will require some general properties of Nil groups.

Remark 54. We recall the following facts about the Nil groups NK_i and \mathbf{Nil}_i^W for all $i \in \mathbb{Z}$:

- (a) if NK_i (resp. \mathbf{Nil}_i^W) is non trivial, it is an infinitely-generated group [64, Theorem A].
- (b) if $A \subset NK_i$ (resp. $A \subset \mathbf{Nil}_i^W$) is a finite subgroup then NK_i (resp. \mathbf{Nil}_i^W) contains an infinite direct sum of copies of A [64, Theorem B].

In what follows, if $m \in \mathbb{N}$, C_m will denote the cyclic group of order m .

Proof of Proposition 52. We first consider the case $i = 0$. Let \mathcal{Q}_8 be equipped with the following presentation:

$$\mathcal{Q}_8 = \langle x, y \mid x^2 = y^2, yxy^{-1} = x^{-1} \rangle.$$

By [23, Theorem 50.31, p. 266], the group ring $\mathbb{Z}[\mathcal{Q}_8]$ fits into the following Cartesian square:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbb{Z}[\mathcal{Q}_8] & \xrightarrow{f} & \mathbb{Z}[C_2 \times C_2] \\ \downarrow q & & \downarrow p \\ R & \longrightarrow & \mathbb{F}_2[C_2 \times C_2], \end{array} \quad (4.5)$$

where q is defined on the generators of \mathcal{Q}_8 by $q(x) = i$ and $q(y) = j$, and f is induced by the homomorphism $\mathcal{Q}_8 \rightarrow C_2 \times C_2$ given by taking the quotient of \mathcal{Q}_8 by its centre. The Cartesian square (4.5) gives rise to the following Mayer-Vietoris sequence:

$$\begin{aligned} NK_2(\mathbb{Z}[\mathcal{Q}_8]) &\longrightarrow NK_2(R) \oplus NK_2(\mathbb{Z}[C_2 \times C_2]) \longrightarrow \\ &NK_2(\mathbb{F}_2[C_2 \times C_2]) \longrightarrow NK_1(\mathbb{Z}[\mathcal{Q}_8]) \longrightarrow \dots \end{aligned} \quad (4.6)$$

By [61, Lemmas 5.3 and 5.4], [81, Theorem 1.3] and [82, Lemma 2.2], we have:

$$\begin{aligned} NK_1(\mathbb{Z}[C_2 \times C_2]) &\cong \Omega_{\mathbb{F}_2[x]} \cong \mathbb{F}_2[x] dx, \quad NK_0(\mathbb{Z}[C_2 \times C_2]) \cong V = x\mathbb{F}_2[x] \\ NK_1(\mathbb{F}_2[C_2]) &\cong (1 + x\varepsilon\mathbb{F}_2[x])^\times \cong V, \quad NK_0(\mathbb{F}_2[C_2]) = 0 \\ NK_0(\mathbb{F}_2[C_2 \times C_2]) &= 0. \end{aligned} \quad (4.7)$$

Since $\mathbb{F}_2[C_2 \times C_2] \cong \mathbb{F}_2[\varepsilon, \nu]/(\varepsilon^2, \nu^2)$, the ideal $I = \langle \varepsilon, \nu, \varepsilon\nu \rangle$ is nilpotent in $\mathbb{F}_2[\varepsilon, \nu]$, and it follows that $NK_0(\mathbb{F}_2[C_2 \times C_2]) \cong NK_0(\mathbb{F}_2) = 0$, which yields equation (4.7). In a similar fashion, we have $NK_0(\mathbb{F}_2[C_2]) = 0$. As Abelian groups, $\Omega_{\mathbb{F}_2}$ and V are both countable infinite direct sums of copies of \mathbb{Z}_2 . As we saw in Theorem 53, the ring R has trivial Nil groups in degrees 0 and 1. On the other hand, observe that $\mathbb{F}_2[C_2 \times C_2] \cong \mathbb{F}_2[\varepsilon, \nu]/(\varepsilon^2, \nu^2)$, hence by [6, Proposition 7.8] and [66, Theorem 3.3], we have:

$$NK_1(\mathbb{F}_2[C_2 \times C_2]) \cong (1 + x\varepsilon\mathbb{F}_2[x])^\times \times (1 + x\nu\mathbb{F}_2[x])^\times \times (1 + x\varepsilon\nu\mathbb{F}_2[x])^\times \cong V^3.$$

The Mayer-Vietoris sequence (4.6) thus reduces to:

$$\begin{aligned} NK_2(\mathbb{Z}[\mathcal{Q}_8]) &\longrightarrow NK_2(R) \oplus NK_2(\mathbb{Z}[C_2 \times C_2]) \longrightarrow NK_2(\mathbb{F}_2[C_2 \times C_2]) \xrightarrow{\delta} \\ NK_1(\mathbb{Z}[\mathcal{Q}_8]) &\xrightarrow{(f_{*1})} NK_1(\mathbb{Z}[C_2 \times C_2]) \xrightarrow{p_*} NK_1(\mathbb{F}_2[C_2 \times C_2]) \xrightarrow{\tau} \\ &NK_0(\mathbb{Z}[\mathcal{Q}_8]) \xrightarrow{f_{*0}} NK_0(\mathbb{Z}[C_2 \times C_2]) \longrightarrow 0 \end{aligned} \quad (4.8)$$

(the labelled homomorphisms are discussed below). The homomorphism

$$p_*: NK_1(\mathbb{Z}[C_2 \times C_2]) \longrightarrow NK_1(\mathbb{F}_2[C_2 \times C_2])$$

is trivial since $\mathbb{Z}[C_2 \times C_2]$ is reduced and $NK_1(\mathbb{F}_2[C_2 \times C_2])$ is Artinian [66, Theorem 3.3]. Thus the part of (4.8) involving $NK_0(\mathbb{Z}[\mathcal{Q}_8])$ is:

$$0 \longrightarrow NK_1(\mathbb{F}_2[C_2 \times C_2]) \xrightarrow{\tau} NK_0(\mathbb{Z}[\mathcal{Q}_8]) \xrightarrow{f_{*0}} NK_0(\mathbb{Z}[C_2 \times C_2]) \longrightarrow 0.$$

Since both $NK_1(\mathbb{F}_2[C_2 \times C_2])$ and $NK_0(\mathbb{Z}[C_2 \times C_2])$ are non-trivial infinite sums of copies of \mathbb{Z}_2 , it follows by exactness that $NK_0(\mathbb{Z}[\mathcal{Q}_8])$ is an infinite direct sum of copies of $\mathbb{Z}_2, \mathbb{Z}_4$ or $\mathbb{Z}_2 \oplus \mathbb{Z}_4$.

We now turn to the case $i = 1$. Consider the following homomorphism:

$$f_{*1}: NK_1(\mathbb{Z}[\mathcal{Q}_8]) \longrightarrow NK_1(\mathbb{Z}[C_2 \times C_2]).$$

Exactness of the sequence (4.8) and the fact that p_* is the trivial homomorphism imply that f_{*1} is a surjection. On the other hand, since once more both $NK_2(\mathbb{F}_2[C_2 \times C_2])$ and $NK_1(\mathbb{Z}[C_2 \times C_2])$ are infinite direct sum of copies of \mathbb{Z}_2 , the latter by [2, Theorem 1.2], the result follows as before. \square

In order to complete the proof of Theorem 1, it remains to determine the twisted Nil groups of \mathcal{Q}_8 . Recall from Section 3.2 that up to isomorphism, there are two non-trivial semi-direct products of the form $\mathcal{Q}_8 \rtimes \mathbb{Z}$, namely $\mathcal{Q}_8 \rtimes_j \mathbb{Z}$, where $j \in \{2, 3\}$. In what follows, we shall use the notation $NK_i^\alpha(\mathbb{Z}[\mathcal{Q}_8]) = NK_i(\mathbb{Z}[\mathcal{Q}_8], \alpha)$.

Proposition 55. *Let $i \in \{0, 1\}$.*

(a) *For the action α of \mathbb{Z} on \mathcal{Q}_8 of order 3,*

$$NK_i^\alpha(\mathbb{Z}[\mathcal{Q}_8]) \cong NK_i^{\alpha^{-1}}(\mathbb{Z}[\mathcal{Q}_8]) \cong NK_i(\mathbb{Z}[\mathcal{Q}_8]). \quad (4.9)$$

(b) *For the action α of \mathbb{Z} on \mathcal{Q}_8 of order 2, the twisted Nil groups are isomorphic to infinitely many copies of $\mathbb{Z}_2, \mathbb{Z}_4$ or $\mathbb{Z}_2 \oplus \mathbb{Z}_4$.*

Proof.

(a) Since the action of \mathbb{Z} on \mathcal{Q}_8 is of order three, there is a surjective homomorphism $\varphi: \mathcal{Q}_8 \rtimes_3 \mathbb{Z} \twoheadrightarrow \mathcal{Q}_8 \rtimes_3 \mathbb{Z}_3 \cong T^*$ defined by taking the \mathbb{Z} -factor modulo 3. We use the technique of induction on hyper-elementary subgroups [32, proof of Theorem 3.2] that asserts that:

$$NK_i(\mathbb{Z}[\mathcal{Q}_8 \rtimes_3 \mathbb{Z}]) \cong \lim_{H \in \text{Hyp}} NK_i(\mathbb{Z}[\varphi^{-1}(H)]),$$

where Hyp denotes the set of hyper-elementary subgroups of $\mathcal{Q}_8 \rtimes_3 \mathbb{Z}_3$, and the limit is with respect to the morphisms induced by conjugation and inclusion in the category Hyp. Following the proof of Proposition 18, we see that the hyper-elementary subgroups of $\mathcal{Q}_8 \rtimes_3 \mathbb{Z}_3$ are isomorphic to one of $\mathbb{Z}_6, \mathbb{Z}_3, \mathbb{Z}_2, \mathbb{Z}_4$ or \mathcal{Q}_8 , and their inverse images by φ are isomorphic to $\mathbb{Z}_2 \times \mathbb{Z}, \mathbb{Z}, \mathbb{Z}_2 \times \mathbb{Z}, \mathbb{Z}_4 \times \mathbb{Z}$ and $\mathcal{Q}_8 \times \mathbb{Z}$ respectively. With the exception of the last two, the corresponding group rings of these groups have trivial Nil groups. Further, the subgroups of $\mathcal{Q}_8 \rtimes_3 \mathbb{Z}$ that are isomorphic to $\mathbb{Z}_4 \times \mathbb{Z}$ are pairwise conjugate, and there is only one maximal element of the form $\mathcal{Q}_8 \times \mathbb{Z}$ in the limit. We thus obtain equation (4.9) using Proposition 52.

(b) Consider the action α of \mathbb{Z} on \mathcal{Q}_8 of order 2 given by exchanging the generators x and y of \mathcal{Q}_8 . Comparing with the Cartesian square (4.5), we observe that this action may be transposed in all the rings of (4.5), thus giving rise to the following Cartesian square of twisted polynomial rings:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbb{Z}[\mathcal{Q}_8]_\alpha[t] & \xrightarrow{f} & \mathbb{Z}[C_2 \times C_2]_\alpha[t] \\ q \downarrow & & \downarrow p \\ R_\alpha[t] & \longrightarrow & \mathbb{F}_2[C_2 \times C_2]_\alpha[t], \end{array}$$

where the induced action of α exchanges the generators in all group rings, and exchanges i and j in R . By [31, Theorem 1.6], the Farrell-Hsiang group NK_s of R also vanishes for $s = 0, 1$. Moreover, let $I = \langle \varepsilon, \nu \rangle$ be the nilpotent ideal generated by ε and ν in $\mathbb{F}_2[C_2 \times C_2]_\alpha[t] \cong \mathbb{F}_2[\varepsilon, \nu]_\alpha[t]$ since $\mathbb{F}_2[\varepsilon, \nu]_\alpha[t]/I \cong \mathbb{F}_2$. By an argument similar to that given in the proof of Proposition 52, it follows that $NK_0^\alpha(\mathbb{F}_2[C_2 \times C_2]) = 0$. Hence we obtain the following long exact sequence:

$$\begin{aligned} NK_2^\alpha(\mathbb{Z}[\mathcal{Q}_8]) &\longrightarrow NK_2^\alpha(R) \oplus NK_2^\alpha(\mathbb{Z}[C_2 \times C_2]) \longrightarrow NK_2^\alpha(\mathbb{F}_2[C_2 \times C_2]) \xrightarrow{\delta} \\ NK_1^\alpha(\mathbb{Z}[\mathcal{Q}_8]) &\longrightarrow NK_1^\alpha(\mathbb{Z}[C_2 \times C_2]) \xrightarrow{p_*} NK_1^\alpha(\mathbb{F}_2[C_2 \times C_2]) \longrightarrow \\ NK_0^\alpha(\mathbb{Z}[\mathcal{Q}_8]) &\longrightarrow NK_0^\alpha(\mathbb{Z}[C_2 \times C_2]) \longrightarrow 0. \end{aligned} \quad (4.10)$$

We first study the groups $K_s^\alpha(S[C_2 \times C_2])$. Let G be the amalgamated product defined as follows. Consider the non-trivial semi-direct products $G_1 = C_4 \rtimes C_2$ and $G_2 = C_4 \rtimes C_2$, where the cyclic groups of order four are generated by $a \in G_1$ and $b \in G_2$, and the cyclic groups of order 2 are generated by $x \in G_1$ and $y \in G_2$. Let D_2 be the group $C_2 \times C_2$ generated by u and v , let $D_2 \hookrightarrow G_1$ be the inclusion given by $u \mapsto a^2, v \mapsto x$, and let $D_2 \hookrightarrow G_2$ be the inclusion given by $u \mapsto y$ and $v \mapsto b^2$. Then the amalgamated product $G_1 *_D G_2$ is a virtually cyclic group. By [24], the Farrell-Hsiang Nil groups $K_\ell^\alpha(S[C_2 \times C_2])$ are isomorphic to the corresponding Waldhausen Nil groups:

$$\mathbf{Nil}_\ell^W(S[D_2] : S[G_1 \setminus D_2], S[G_2 \setminus D_2])$$

for all $s \in \mathbb{Z}$ and all rings S .

Now, for the rings $S = \mathbb{Z}$ or \mathbb{F}_2 , these Waldhausen Nil groups are isomorphic to infinite direct sums of copies of \mathbb{Z}_2 . For $S = \mathbb{Z}$ and $\ell = 0, 1$, see [61, Theorem 5.2] and [5, Section 7.2]. Hence $K_\ell^\alpha(S[C_2 \times C_2])$ is isomorphic to an infinite direct sum of copies of \mathbb{Z}_2 for $\ell = 0, 1, 2$ and for $S = \mathbb{Z}$ or \mathbb{F}_2 . From the exact sequence (4.10), for $\ell = 0, 1$, $NK_0^\alpha(\mathbb{Z}[\mathcal{Q}_8])$ fits into an exact sequence of the form:

$$0 \longrightarrow A_{\ell+1} \longrightarrow NK_\ell^\alpha(\mathbb{Z}[\mathcal{Q}_8]) \longrightarrow B_\ell \longrightarrow 0,$$

where both $A_{\ell+1}$ and B_ℓ are isomorphic to infinite direct sums of copies of \mathbb{Z}_2 . The result follows using Remark 54. \square

Summing up, Propositions 52 and 55 give rise to the Nil_i summands of equation (4.2), and the decompositions of the statement of Theorem 1 then follow.

Appendix A

The fibred isomorphism conjecture

The setup

Let $\mathcal{S}: \text{TOP} \rightarrow \Omega\text{-SPECTRA}$ be a covariant homotopy functor. Let \mathbf{F} be the category of continuous surjective maps: objects in \mathbf{F} are continuous surjective maps $p: E \rightarrow B$, where E, B are objects in TOP , and morphisms between pairs of maps $p_1: E_1 \rightarrow B_1$ and $p_2: E_2 \rightarrow B_2$ consist of continuous maps $f: E_1 \rightarrow E_2$ and $g: B_1 \rightarrow B_2$ that make the following diagram commute:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} E_1 & \xrightarrow{f} & E_2 \\ p_1 \downarrow & & p_2 \downarrow \\ B_1 & \xrightarrow{g} & B_2. \end{array} \quad (\text{A1})$$

Within this framework, Quinn constructed a functor between \mathbf{F} and $\Omega\text{-SPECTRA}$ [71]. The value of this Ω -spectrum at the object $(p: E \rightarrow B)$ is denoted by $\mathbb{H}(B; \mathcal{S}(p))$, and the value at the object $(E \rightarrow *)$ is $\mathcal{S}(E)$. The map of spectra $\mathbb{A}: \mathbb{H}(B_1; \mathcal{S}(p_1)) \rightarrow \mathbb{H}(B_2; \mathcal{S}(p_2))$ associated to the commutative diagram (A1) is known as the *Quinn assembly map*. Other ingredients for the fibred isomorphism conjecture may be found in [33].

The conjecture

Given a discrete group Γ , let $E_{\mathcal{V}\mathcal{C}}\Gamma$ be a universal Γ -space for the family of virtually cyclic subgroups of Γ , let $\mathcal{B}_{\mathcal{V}\mathcal{C}}\Gamma$ denote the orbit space $E_{\mathcal{V}\mathcal{C}}\Gamma/\Gamma$, and let X be a space on which Γ acts freely and properly discontinuously. If (f, g) is the following morphism in \mathbf{F} :

$$\begin{array}{ccc} E_{\mathcal{V}\mathcal{C}}\Gamma \times_{\Gamma} X & \xrightarrow{f} & X/\Gamma \\ p_1 \downarrow & & p_2 \downarrow \\ \mathcal{B}_{\mathcal{V}\mathcal{C}}\Gamma & \xrightarrow{g} & * \end{array}$$

then the *Fibred Isomorphism Conjecture* for the functor \mathcal{S} and the group Γ is the assertion that

$$\mathbb{A}: \mathbb{H}(\mathcal{B}_{\mathcal{V}\mathcal{C}}\Gamma; \mathcal{S}(p_1)) \rightarrow \mathcal{S}(X/\Gamma)$$

is a homotopy equivalence, and hence the induced map

$$\mathbb{A}_* : \pi_n(\mathbb{H}(\mathcal{B}_{\mathcal{V}\mathcal{C}}\Gamma; \mathcal{S}(p_1))) \longrightarrow \pi_n(\mathcal{S}(X/\Gamma))$$

is an isomorphism for all $n \in \mathbb{Z}$. This conjecture was stated in [33] for the functors $\mathcal{S} = \mathcal{P}_*(\cdot)$, $\mathcal{K}(\cdot)$ and $\mathcal{L}^{-\infty}$, the pseudoisotopy, algebraic K -theory and $\mathcal{L}^{-\infty}$ -theory functors respectively. In this paper, we use the functor $\mathcal{S} = \mathcal{K}_*(\cdot)$. The validity of this conjecture for K -theory and braid groups of \mathbb{S}^2 is proved in [57]. Other cases in which the conjecture holds may be found in [80].

Appendix B

Braid groups

In this appendix, we recall briefly some basic facts and results about braid groups for the convenience of the reader. More information about braid groups may be found in [12, 13, 49, 52]. We refer the reader to [51] for a recent survey on surface braid groups.

If $n \geq 1$, the n -string Artin braid group, denoted B_n , may be defined by the following presentation [4]:

generators: $\sigma_1, \dots, \sigma_{n-1}$ (known as the *Artin generators*).

relations: (known as the *Artin relations*)

$$\sigma_i \sigma_j = \sigma_j \sigma_i \text{ if } |i - j| \geq 2 \text{ and } 1 \leq i, j \leq n - 1 \quad (\text{B.1})$$

$$\sigma_i \sigma_{i+1} \sigma_i = \sigma_{i+1} \sigma_i \sigma_{i+1} \text{ for all } 1 \leq i \leq n - 2. \quad (\text{B.2})$$

The generator σ_i may be regarded geometrically as the braid with a single positive crossing of the i^{th} string with the $(i + 1)^{\text{st}}$ string, while all other strings remain vertical (see Figure B.1). It is convenient to view a geometric braid as being a collection of pairwise-disjoint arcs (or strings) in the Cartesian product $\mathbb{D}^2 \times [0, 1]$, where \mathbb{D}^2 is the 2-disc, and each string joins two points of the form $(x, 0)$ to $(y, 1)$, where x and y belong to a set X of n distinguished basepoints lying in the interior of \mathbb{D}^2 . The group operation in B_n corresponds to concatenation of these geometric braids. The group B_1 is trivial, B_2 is infinite cyclic generated by σ_1 , and for all $n \geq 2$, B_n is infinite. For all $n \in \mathbb{N}$, B_n is torsion free [26]. The map $\sigma: B_n \rightarrow S_n$

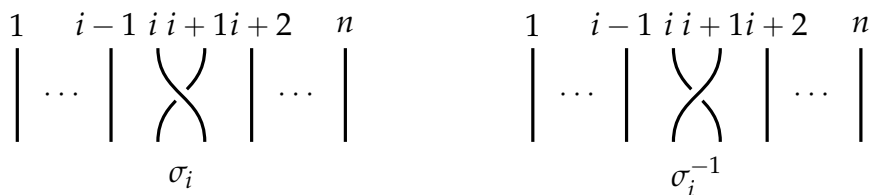


Figure B.1: The braid σ_i and its inverse.

defined on the generators by $\sigma(\sigma_i) = (i, i + 1)$ for all $1 \leq i \leq n - 1$ may be seen to be a surjective homomorphism. Its kernel, denoted by P_n , is known as the n -string pure Artin braid group. Thus a braid $\beta \in B_n$ is *pure* if for all $x \in X$, there is a string of β that joins $(x, 0)$

to $(x, 1)$. The ‘half twist’ braid Δ_n is defined by:

$$\Delta_n = \prod_{i=1}^{n-1} \sigma_1 \cdots \sigma_{n-i}.$$

Using the braid relations, one may check that the square Δ_n^2 of Δ_n , known as the ‘full twist’ braid is given by:

$$\Delta_n^2 = (\sigma_1 \cdots \sigma_{n-1})^n \in B_n. \tag{B.3}$$

The braids Δ_n and Δ_n^2 are illustrated in Figure B.2(a) and (b) in the case $n = 6$. One may check that Δ_n^2 is a pure braid. If $n \geq 3$, $Z(B_n) = Z(P_n) = \langle \Delta_n^2 \rangle$, where $Z(G)$ denotes the centre of the group G [18]. The Artin pure braid group is generated by the set $\{A_{i,j}\}_{1 \leq i < j \leq n}$ [52,

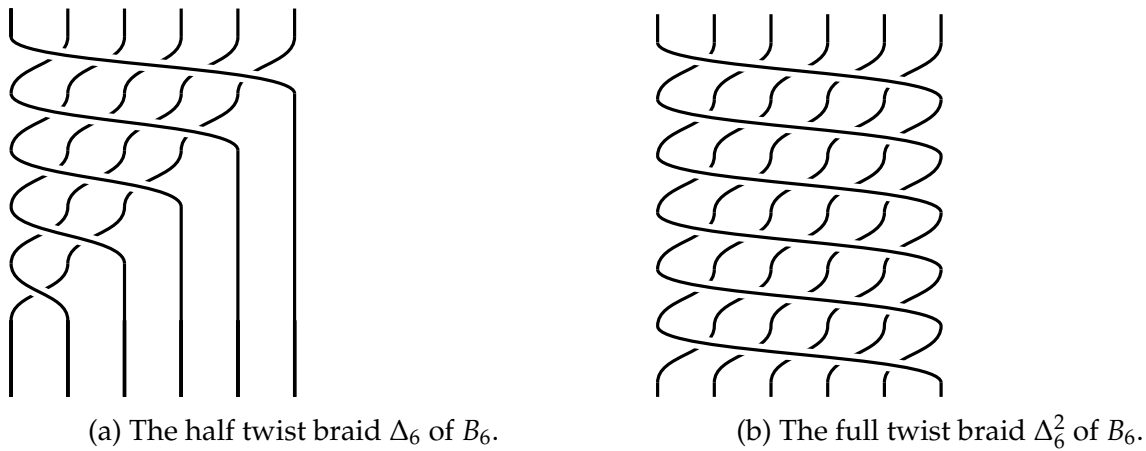


Figure B.2: The braids Δ_6 and Δ_6^2 of B_6 .

Lemma I.4.2], where:

$$A_{i,j} = \sigma_{j-1} \cdots \sigma_{i+1} \sigma_i^2 \sigma_{i+1}^{-1} \cdots \sigma_{j-1}^{-1}. \tag{B.4}$$

Geometrically, $A_{i,j}$ may be represented by a braid all of whose strings are vertical, with the exception of the j^{th} string that wraps around the i^{th} string as in Figure B.3. In particular, for

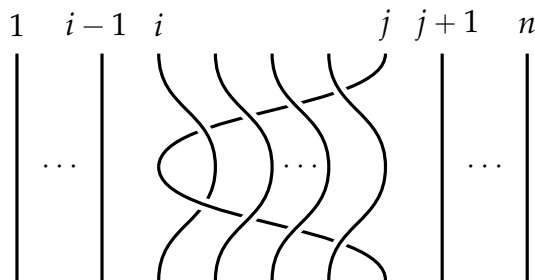


Figure B.3: The element $A_{i,j}$ of B_n .

all $i = 1, \dots, n-1$, $A_{i,i+1} = \sigma_i^2$.

The Artin braid groups admit many different generalisations, one being that of *surface braid groups*. If M is a surface, orientable or not, with or without boundary, and with a

finite number (possibly zero) of punctures, the n -string braid group $B_n(M)$ may be defined geometrically simply by replacing \mathbb{D}^2 by M . The subgroup $P_n(M)$ of n -string pure braids is defined in a manner similar to that for P_n . A number of presentations of $B_n(M)$ and $P_n(M)$ may be found in the literature, see [8, 39, 48] for example.

Braid groups may also be defined topologically in terms of configuration spaces as follows. Let $F_n(M)$ denote the n^{th} configuration space of M defined by:

$$F_n(M) = \{(p_1, \dots, p_n) \in M^n \mid p_i \neq p_j \text{ for all } i, j \in \{1, \dots, n\}, i \neq j\}.$$

We equip $F_n(M)$ with the topology induced by the product topology on M^n . A transversality argument shows that $F_n(M)$ is a connected $2n$ -dimensional open manifold. There is a natural free action of the symmetric group S_n on $F_n(M)$ given by permutation of coordinates. The resulting orbit space $F_n(M)/S_n$ shall be denoted by $D_n(M)$, the n^{th} permuted configuration space of M , and may be thought of as the configuration space of n unordered points. The associated canonical projection $p: F_n(M) \rightarrow D_n(M)$ is thus a regular $n!$ -fold covering map [52, p. 14]. Fox and Neuwirth showed that $P_n(M) \cong \pi_1(F_n(M))$ and $B_n(M) \cong \pi_1(D_n(M))$ [36]. If $n = 1$ then $F_1(M) = M$, and thus $B_1(M) = P_1(M) = \pi_1(M)$, so braid groups generalise the notion of fundamental group. The map p gives rise to the following short exact sequence:

$$1 \rightarrow P_n(M) \rightarrow B_n(M) \xrightarrow{p_*} S_n \rightarrow 1. \quad (\text{B.5})$$

In the case where M is the disc, p_* is the surjective homomorphism σ described on page 63.

This topological definition is very useful in practice, and may be used as follows to obtain fibrations involving the configurations spaces, and (short) exact sequences bringing into play the homotopy groups of these spaces. Suppose that M is a surface with empty boundary, and let $m > n \geq 1$. Then the map $p_{m,n}: F_m(M) \rightarrow F_n(M)$ given by $p_{m,n}(x_1, \dots, x_m) = (x_1, \dots, x_n)$ that forgets the last $m - n$ coordinates is a locally-trivial fibration, known as the *Fadell-Neuwirth fibration*, with fibre $F_{m-n}(M \setminus \{z_1, \dots, z_n\})$, where (z_1, \dots, z_n) is a basepoint of $F_n(M)$ [29]. The fibre is known to be an Eilenberg–Mac Lane space of type $K(\pi, 1)$. Taking the long exact sequence in homotopy of the fibration, and using Fox and Neuwirth’s isomorphisms mentioned above, we obtain the *Fadell-Neuwirth short exact sequence of surface pure braid groups*:

$$1 \rightarrow \pi_1(F_{m-n}(M \setminus \{z_1, \dots, z_n\})) \rightarrow P_m(M) \xrightarrow{(p_{m,n})_*} P_n(M) \rightarrow 1. \quad (\text{B.6})$$

The homomorphism $(p_{m,n})_*$ induced by the map $p_{m,n}$ may be visualised geometrically as the map that ‘forgets’ the last $m - n$ strings of a braid in $P_m(M)$. Due to the fact that the higher homotopy groups of the braid groups of \mathbb{S}^2 and $\mathbb{R}P^2$ are non trivial, in order to obtain the short exact sequence (B.6) for these two surfaces, we need to suppose additionally that $n \geq 3$ (resp. $n \leq 2$). In particular, if $m = n + 1$, then (B.6) becomes:

$$1 \rightarrow \pi_1(M \setminus \{z_1, \dots, z_n\}) \rightarrow P_{n+1}(M) \xrightarrow{(p_{n+1,n})_*} P_n(M) \rightarrow 1. \quad (\text{B.7})$$

The braid groups of \mathbb{S}^2 and $\mathbb{R}P^2$ are of particular interest, partly because they are the only surface braid groups to possess torsion, and as we explained in the introduction, the methods of [3, 35] cannot be applied to study their lower algebraic K -theory. The isomorphism classes of the maximal finite subgroups of $B_n(\mathbb{S}^2)$ are given in Theorem 2. An analogous

result for the braid groups of $\mathbb{R}P^2$ may be found in [46]. The braid groups of the sphere were initially studied by Fadell, Van Buskirk and Gillette [30, 38, 76]. A presentation of $B_n(\mathbb{S}^2)$ due to the first two of these authors is given in Theorem 34. From a geometric point of view, the space $\mathbb{S}^2 \times [0, 1]$ in which geometric braids of the sphere are defined may be visualised as that between two concentric spheres (see [52, pp. 41, 42 and 45] or [69, Figure 2.1(c), p. 193] for example), and the geometric representation of the generators of that presentation is as in Figure B.1. Using such figures, the reader may convince himself or herself of the validity of the relations given in Theorem 34, in particular the ‘surface relation’ (3.1). Other properties of $B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)$ that we use in this manuscript are given in Section 3.1. The full twist braid Δ_n^2 also plays an important rôle in $B_n(\mathbb{S}^2)$. If $n \geq 3$, it is the unique element of $B_n(\mathbb{S}^2)$ of order 2, it is the unique non-trivial torsion element of $P_n(\mathbb{S}^2)$, and it generates the centre of $B_n(\mathbb{S}^2)$ [38, 40]. The pure braid group $P_4(\mathbb{S}^2)$ is generated by the set $\{A_{i,j}\}_{1 \leq i < j \leq 4}$, where in terms of the generators σ_1, σ_2 and σ_3 of $B_4(\mathbb{S}^2)$, $A_{i,j}$ is given by (B.4), and its geometric representation within $\mathbb{S}^2 \times [0, 1]$ is as in Figure B.3. If $m \geq 1$, a presentation of $P_m(\mathbb{S}^2)$ may be obtained using techniques similar to those of [41, Proposition 7]. Note that if one takes $n = 0$ in that proposition, one does indeed obtain a presentation of $P_m(\mathbb{S}^2)$ whose generating set is $\{A_{i,j}\}_{1 \leq i < j \leq m}$, and whose relations are given by those of [52, Lemma I.4.2] for P_m , and by the ‘surface relations’ that are of the form:

$$\left(\prod_{i=1}^{j-1} A_{i,j} \right) \left(\prod_{k=j+1}^m A_{j,k} \right) = 1 \quad (\text{B.8})$$

for all $1 \leq j \leq m$.

Taking $M = \mathbb{S}^2$ and $n = 3$ in (B.7) yields:

$$1 \longrightarrow \pi_1(\mathbb{S}^2 \setminus \{z_1, z_2, z_3\}) \longrightarrow P_4(\mathbb{S}^2) \xrightarrow{(p_{4,3})_*} P_3(\mathbb{S}^2) \longrightarrow 1. \quad (\text{B.9})$$

The kernel is a free group of rank 2 that may be identified with the subgroup of $P_4(\mathbb{S}^2)$ generated by $(A_{1,4}, A_{2,4})$, and the quotient $P_3(\mathbb{S}^2)$ is equal to $\langle \Delta_3^2 \rangle$, and is isomorphic to \mathbb{Z}_2 . The map $s: P_3(\mathbb{S}^2) \longrightarrow P_4(\mathbb{S}^2)$ defined by $s(\Delta_3^2) = \Delta_4^2$ is a homomorphism, and is a section for $(p_{4,3})_*$ since removal of the last string of Δ_4^2 in $P_4(\mathbb{S}^2)$ yields the braid Δ_3^2 in $P_3(\mathbb{S}^2)$, i.e. $(p_{4,3})_*(\Delta_4^2) = \Delta_3^2$. So the short exact sequence (B.9) splits, and since $\Delta_4^2 \in Z(P_4(\mathbb{S}^2))$, it follows that:

$$P_4(\mathbb{S}^2) \cong \mathbb{F}_2 \times \mathbb{Z}_2. \quad (\text{B.10})$$

From this, it follows also that $Z(P_4(\mathbb{S}^2)) = \langle \Delta_4^2 \rangle$.

Bibliography

- [1] A. Adem and J. Milgram, Cohomology of finite groups, Grundlehren der Mathematischen Wissenschaften [Fundamental Principles of Mathematical Sciences], vol. 309. Springer-Verlag, Berlin, 2004.
- [2] V. Angeltveit, T. Gerhardt, M. Hill and A. Lindenstrauss, On the algebraic K -theory of truncated polynomial algebras in several variables, *J. K-Theory* **13** (2014), 57–81.
- [3] C. S. Aravinda, F. T. Farrell and S. K. Roushon, Algebraic K -theory of pure braid groups, *Asian J. Math.* **4** (2000), 337–343.
- [4] E. Artin, Theorie der Zöpfe, *Abh. Math. Sem. Univ. Hamburg* **4** (1925), 47–72.
- [5] A. Bartels, W. Lück and H. Reich, On the Farrell-Jones conjecture and its applications, *J. Topology* **1** (2008), 57–86.
- [6] H. Bass, Algebraic K -theory, W. A. Benjamin Inc., New York-Amsterdam, 1968.
- [7] H. Bass, The Dirichlet unit theorem, induced characters, and Whitehead groups of finite groups, *Topology* **4** (1966), 391–410.
- [8] P. Bellingeri, On presentations of surface braid groups, *J. Algebra* **274** (2004), 543–563.
- [9] E. Berkove, F. T. Farrell, D. Juan-Pineda and K. Pearson, The Farrell-Jones isomorphism conjecture for finite covolume hyperbolic actions and the algebraic K -theory of Bianchi groups, *Trans. Amer. Math. Soc.* **352** (2000), 5689–5702.
- [10] E. Berkove, D. Juan-Pineda and Q. Lu, Algebraic K -theory of mapping class groups, *K-Theory* **32** (2004), 83–100.
- [11] E. Berkove, D. Juan-Pineda and K. Pearson, A geometric approach to the lower algebraic K -theory of Fuchsian groups, *Topology Appl.* **119** (2002), 269–277.
- [12] A. J. Berrick, F. R. Cohen, E. Hanbury, Y.-L. Wong and J. Wu, Braids: Introductory Lectures on Braids, Configurations and Their Applications, Lecture Notes Series, Institute for Mathematical Sciences, National University of Singapore, Vol. 19, World Scientific, 2010.
- [13] J. S. Birman, Braids, links and mapping class groups, *Ann. Math. Stud.* **82**, Princeton University Press, 1974.
- [14] O. Broche Cristo, A. Konovalov, A. Olivieri, G. Olteanu and Á. del Río, Wedderga – Wedderburn Decomposition of Group Algebras, GAP package, Version 4.3.3, 2009 (<http://www.um.es/adelrio/wedderga.htm>).
- [15] D. W. Carter, Lower K -theory of finite groups, *Comm. Algebra* **8** (1980), 1927–1937.
- [16] D. W. Carter, Localization in lower algebraic K -theory. *Comm. Algebra* **8** (1980), 603–622.
- [17] A. W. Chatters, Rings which are nearly principal ideal domains, *Glasgow Math. J.* **40** (1998), 243–351.

- [18] W.-L. Chow, On the algebraical braid group, *Ann. Math.* **49** (1948), 654–658.
- [19] D. A. Cox, Galois theory, Pure and Applied Mathematics, Wiley-Interscience, Hoboken, NJ, 2004.
- [20] H. S. M. Coxeter, Regular complex polytopes, Second edition, Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, 1991.
- [21] H. S. M. Coxeter and W. O. J. Moser, Generators and relations for discrete groups, *Ergebnisse der Mathematik und ihrer Grenzgebiete*, Vol. 14, Fourth edition, Springer-Verlag, Berlin, 1980.
- [22] C. W. Curtis and I. Reiner, Methods of representation theory, Vol. I, with applications to finite groups and orders, John Wiley & Sons Inc., New York, 1981.
- [23] C. W. Curtis and I. Reiner, Methods of representation theory, Vol. II, with applications to finite groups and orders, John Wiley & Sons Inc., New York, 1987.
- [24] J. Davis, K. Khan and A. Ranicki, Algebraic K -theory over the infinite dihedral group: an algebraic approach, *Algebr. Geom. Topol.* **11** (2011), 2391–2436.
- [25] I. M. S. Dey and H. Neumann, The Hopf property of free products, *Math. Z.* **117** (1970), 325–339.
- [26] J. L. Dyer, The algebraic braid groups are torsion-free: an algebraic proof, *Math. Z.* **172** (1980), 157–160.
- [27] S. Endô and Y. Hironaka, Finite groups with trivial class groups, *J. Math. Soc. Japan* **31** (1979), 161–174.
- [28] D. B. A. Epstein, Ends, in *Topology of 3-manifolds and related topics* (Proc. Univ. of Georgia Institute, 1961), 110–117, Prentice-Hall, Englewood Cliffs, N.J., 1962.
- [29] E. Fadell and L. Neuwirth, Configuration spaces, *Math. Scand.* **10** (1962), 111–118.
- [30] E. Fadell and J. Van Buskirk, The braid groups of \mathbb{E}^2 and \mathbb{S}^2 , *Duke Math. J.* **29** (1962), 243–257.
- [31] F. T. Farrell, The obstruction to fibering a manifold over a circle, *Indiana Univ. Math. J.* **21** (1971/1972), 315–346.
- [32] F. T. Farrell and W. C. Hsiang, The Whitehead group of poly-(finite or cyclic) groups, *J. London Math. Soc.* **24** (1981), 308–324.
- [33] F. T. Farrell and L. E. Jones, Isomorphism conjectures in algebraic K -theory, *J. Amer. Math. Soc.* **6** (1993), 249–297.
- [34] F. T. Farrell and L. E. Jones, The lower algebraic K -theory of virtually infinite cyclic groups, *K-Theory* **9** (1995), 13–30.
- [35] F. T. Farrell and S. K. Roushon, The Whitehead groups of braid groups vanish, *Internat. Math. Res. Notices* **10** (2000), 515–526.
- [36] R. H. Fox and L. Neuwirth, The braid groups, *Math. Scand.* **10** (1962), 119–126.
- [37] S. C. Geller and C. A. Weibel, $K_1(A, B, I)$, *J. Reine Angew. Math.* **342** (1983), 12–34.
- [38] R. Gillette and J. Van Buskirk, The word problem and consequences for the braid groups and mapping class groups of the 2-sphere, *Trans. Amer. Math. Soc.* **131** (1968), 277–296.
- [39] D. L. Gonçalves and J. Guaschi, On the structure of surface pure braid groups, *J. Pure Appl. Algebra* **182** (2003), 33–64 (due to a printer’s error, this article was republished in its entirety with the reference 186 (2004) 187–218).

- [40] D. L. Gonçalves and J. Guaschi, The roots of the full twist for surface braid groups, *Math. Proc. Camb. Phil. Soc.* **137** (2004), 307–320.
- [41] D. L. Gonçalves and J. Guaschi, The braid group $B_{m,n}(\mathbb{S}^2)$ and a generalisation of the Fadell-Neuwirth short exact sequence, *J. Knot Th. Ramif.* **14** (2005), 375–403.
- [42] D. L. Gonçalves and J. Guaschi, The quaternion group as a subgroup of the sphere braid groups, *Bull. London Math. Soc.* **39** (2007), 232–234.
- [43] D. L. Gonçalves and J. Guaschi, The classification and the conjugacy classes of the finite subgroups of the sphere braid groups, *Algebr. Geom. Topol.* **8** (2008), 757–785.
- [44] D. L. Gonçalves and J. Guaschi, The lower central and derived series of the braid groups of the sphere, *Trans. Amer. Math. Soc.* **361** (2009), 3375–3399.
- [45] D. L. Gonçalves and J. Guaschi, Classification of the virtually cyclic subgroups of the pure braid groups of the projective plane, *J. Group Theory* **13** (2010), 277–294.
- [46] D. L. Gonçalves and J. Guaschi, Surface braid groups and coverings, *J. London Math. Soc.* **85** (2012), 855–868.
- [47] D. L. Gonçalves and J. Guaschi, The virtually cyclic subgroups of the braid groups of the sphere, *Springer Briefs in Mathematics*, Springer (2013).
- [48] J. González-Meneses, New presentations of surface braid groups, *J. Knot Th. Ramif.* **10** (2001), 431–451.
- [49] J. González-Meneses, Basic results on braid groups, *Ann. Math. Blaise Pascal* **18** (2011), 15–59.
- [50] M. Gromov, Hyperbolic groups, in *Essays in Group Theory*, 75–263, *Math. Sci. Res. Inst. Publ.* **8**, Springer, 1987.
- [51] J. Guaschi and D. Juan-Pineda, A survey of surface braid groups and the lower algebraic K -theory of their group rings, in *Handbook of Group Actions*, eds. L. Ji, A. Papadopoulos et S.-T. Yau, Volume II, **32**, International Press of Boston Inc., pp. 23–76, 2015, *Advanced Lectures in Mathematics*.
- [52] V. L. Hansen, *Braids and coverings: Selected topics*, London Math. Soc. Student Texts **18**, Cambridge University Press, 1989.
- [53] D. L. Johnson, *Presentation of groups*, London Math. Soc. Student Texts **15**, 2nd ed., Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, 1997.
- [54] D. Juan-Pineda, J.-F. Lafont, S. Millán-Vossler and S. Pallekonda, Algebraic K -theory of virtually free groups, *Proc. Royal Soc. Edinburgh* **141A** (2011), 1–22.
- [55] D. Juan-Pineda and I. Leary, On classifying spaces for the family of virtually cyclic subgroups, in *Recent developments in algebraic topology*, *Contemp. Math.* **407** (2001), 135–145.
- [56] D. Juan-Pineda and S. Millán-López, The Whitehead group and the lower algebraic K -theory of braid groups on \mathbb{S}^2 and $\mathbb{R}P^2$, *Algebr. Geom. Topol.* **10** (2010), 1887–1903.
- [57] D. Juan-Pineda and J. Sánchez, The K and L theoretic Farrell-Jones isomorphism conjecture for braid groups, *Topology and Geometric Group Theory*, 33–43, M. W. Davis, et al. (eds.), Springer Proc. Math. Stat. **184**, 2016.
- [58] M. A. Kervaire and M. Pavaman Murthy, On the projective class group of cyclic groups of prime power order, *Comment. Math. Helv.* **52** (1977), 415–452.
- [59] M. Kreck and W. Lück, *The Novikov conjecture*, Geometry and algebra, Oberwolfach Seminars **33**, Birkhäuser Verlag, Basel, 2005.

- [60] J.-F. Lafont, B. A. Magurn and I. J. Ortiz, Lower algebraic K -theory of certain reflection groups, *Math. Proc. Cambridge Philos. Soc.* **148** (2010), 193–226.
- [61] J.-F. Lafont and I. J. Ortiz, Relative hyperbolicity, classifying spaces, and lower algebraic K -theory, *Topology* **46** (2007), 527–553.
- [62] J.-F. Lafont and I. J. Ortiz, Relating the Farrell Nil-groups to the Waldhausen Nil-groups, *Forum Math.* **20** (2008), 445–455.
- [63] J.-F. Lafont and I. J. Ortiz, Lower algebraic K -theory of hyperbolic 3-simplex reflection groups, *Comment. Math. Helv.* **84** (2009), 297–337.
- [64] J.-F. Lafont, S. Prassidis and K. Wang, Revisiting Farrell’s nonfiniteness of Nil, *Ann. K-Theory* **1** (2016), 209–225.
- [65] B. A. Magurn, Negative K -theory of generalized quaternion groups and binary polyhedral groups, *Comm. Algebra* **41** (2013), 4146–4160.
- [66] R. D. Martin, Nilgroups of Finite Abelian Groups, Ph.D. Thesis, Columbia University, 1976, 40 pp, ProQuest LLC.
- [67] Mathematica, Wolfram Research, Inc., Version 11.2, Champaign, IL (2017).
- [68] K. Murasugi, Seifert fibre spaces and braid groups, *Proc. London Math. Soc.* **44** (1982), 71–84.
- [69] K. Murasugi and B. I. Kurpita, A study of braids, Mathematics and its Applications 484, Kluwer Academic Publishers, Dordrecht, 1999.
- [70] R. Oliver, Whitehead groups of finite groups, London Math. Soc. Lecture Note Series **132**, Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, 1988.
- [71] F. Quinn, Ends of maps II, *Invent. Math.* **68** (1982), 353–424.
- [72] J.-P. Serre, Corps locaux, deuxième édition, Publications de l’Université de Nancago, No. VIII, Hermann, Paris, 1968.
- [73] R. G. Swan, Projective modules over binary polyhedral groups, *J. Reine Angew. Math.* **342** (1983), 66–172.
- [74] C. B. Thomas, Elliptic structures on 3-manifolds, London Math. Soc. Lecture Note Series **104**, Cambridge University, 1986.
- [75] F. Ushitaki, A generalization of a theorem of Milnor, *Osaka J. Math.* **31** (1994), 403–415.
- [76] J. Van Buskirk, Braid groups of compact 2-manifolds with elements of finite order, *Trans. Amer. Math. Soc.* **122** (1966), 81–97.
- [77] F. Waldhausen, Algebraic K -theory of generalized free products, Part 1, *Ann. Math.* **108** (1978), 135–204.
- [78] C. T. C. Wall, Poincaré complexes I, *Ann. Math.* **86** (1967), 213–245.
- [79] C. T. C. Wall, Norms of units in group rings, *Proc. London Math. Soc.* **29** (1974), 593–632.
- [80] C. Wegner, The K -theoretic Farrell-Jones conjecture for $CAT(0)$ -groups, *Trans. Amer. Math. Soc.* **140** (2012), 779–793.
- [81] C. Weibel, NK_0 and NK_1 of the groups C_4 and D_4 , *Comment. Math. Helv.* **84** (2009), 339–349 (addendum to [63]).

- [82] C. Weibel, *The K-book, An Introduction to Algebraic K-theory*, Graduate Studies in Mathematics **145** Amer. Math. Soc., 2013.
- [83] J. A. Wolf, *Spaces of constant curvature*, sixth edition, AMS Chelsea Publishing, vol. 372, 2011.
- [84] T. Yamada, On the group algebras of metacyclic groups over algebraic number fields, *J. Fac. Sci. Univ. Tokyo Sect. I* **15** (1968), 179–199.
- [85] T. Yamada, On the group algebras of metabelian groups over algebraic number fields I, *Osaka J. Math.* **6** (1969), 211–228.
- [86] O. Zariski, On the Poincaré group of rational plane curves, *Am. J. Math.* **58** (1936), 607–619.